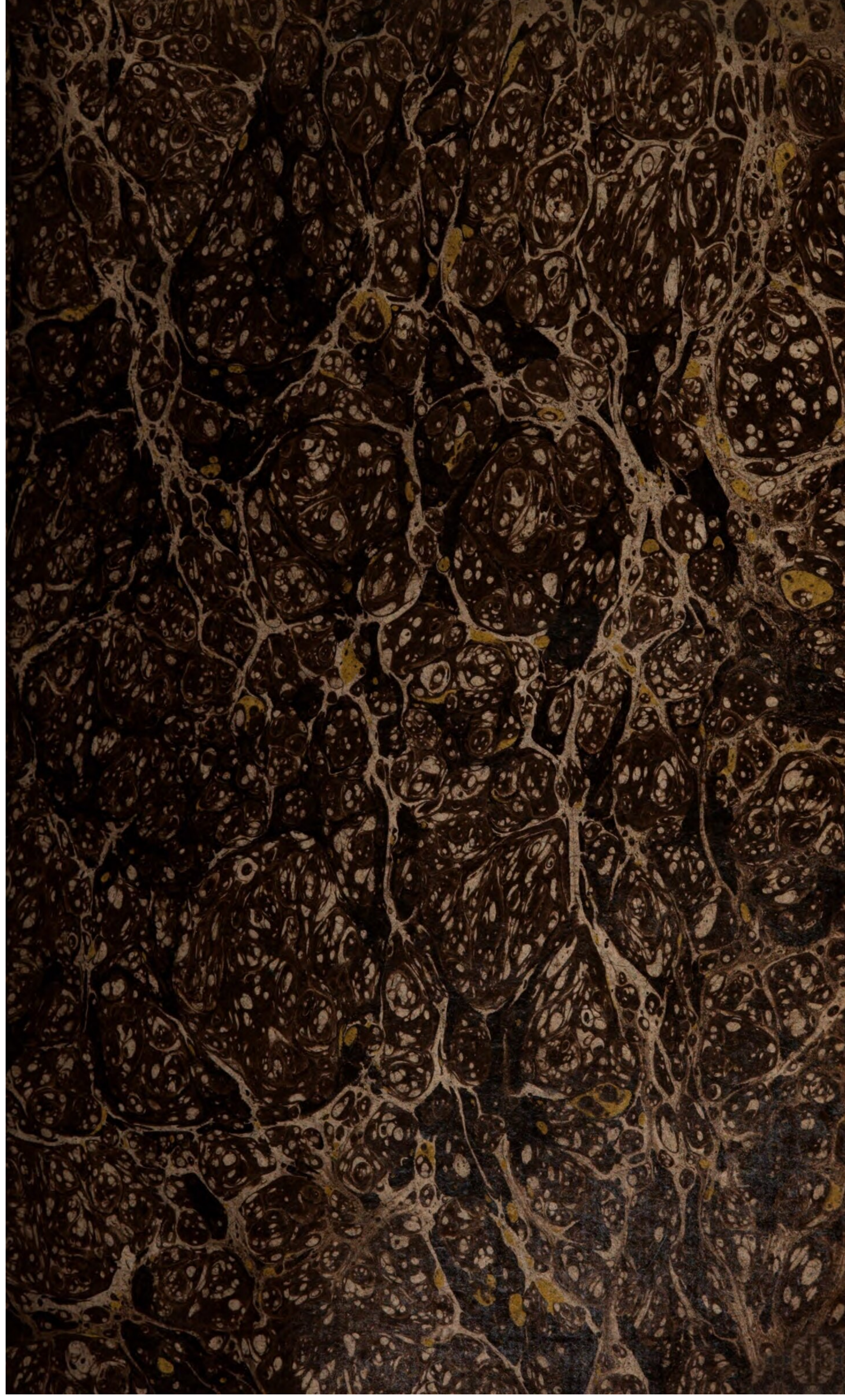








7H. A. 1207. C.

7R. A. 1207. C.

P. lat. 1163.

Thom. Kemp.

P. XV. 1407.

pag. 365⁷.

OF THE
Imitation of Christ;

IN THREE BOOKS:

WITH THE
BOOK OF THE SACRAMENT.

Translated from the Latin of

THOMAS À KEMPIS,

BY JOHN PAYNE.

THE THIRD EDITION.

LONDON:

Printed for the AUTHOR; and Sold by J. PHILLIPS, in
George-Yard, Lombard-Street.

MDCCCLXXXV.

OF THE
Imitation of Christ;

IN THREE BOOKS:

WITH THE

BOOK OF THE SACRAMENT.

Translated from the Latin of

THOMAS À KEMPIS,

BY JOHN PAXTON.

THE THIRD EDITION.

LONDON:

Printed for the Author; and sold by J. Edwards, in

George-Yard, Lombard-Street.

MDCCLXXV.

Bayerische
Staatsbibliothek
München

CONTENTS.

	Page
PREFACE.	iii

A short Account of KEMPIS, taken from THE AMARANTH; a Collection of Re- ligious Poems, by WALTER HARTE, printed 1767	xliii
---	-------

BOOK THE FIRST.

PREPARATORY INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE SPIRITUAL LIFE.

	Page
CHAP. I. Of the Contempt of Worldly Vanities	I
CHAP. II. Of Humility with respect to Intellectual Attainments	3
CHAP. III. Of the Knowledge of the Truth	6
CHAP. IV. Of Prudence with respect to our Opinions and Actions	10
CHAP. V. Of Reading the Scriptures, and other Holy Books	11

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
CHAP. VI. Of Inordinate Affections	13
CHAP. VII. Of Vain Hope, and Elation of Mind	14
CHAP. VIII. Of Avoiding the Familiar Intercourses of the World	15
CHAP. IX. Of Subjection and Obedience	16
CHAP. X. Of Superfluous Talking	18
CHAP. XI. Of True Peace of Mind, and Zeal for Spiritual Improvement	20
CHAP. XII. Of the Benefit of Adversity	23
CHAP. XIII. Of resisting Temptations	24
CHAP. XIV. of avoiding Rash Judgment	29
CHAP. XV. Of Works of Charity	30
CHAP. XVI. Of Bearing the Infirmities of Others	32
CHAP. XVII. Of a Recluse Life	34
CHAP. XVIII. Of the Examples of the Holy Fathers	36

CHAP.

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
CHAP. XIX. Of Religious Exercifes	39
CHAP. XX. Of Solitude and Silence	43
CHAP. XXI. Of Compunction of Heart	48
CHAP. XXII. Of the Confideration of Human Mifery	51
CHAP. XXIII. Of the Meditation of Death	55
CHAP. XXIV. Of the Laft Judgment, and the Punifhment of Sinners	60
CHAP. XXV. Of Zeal in the total Re- formation of Life	65

B O O K T H E S E C O N D.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE MORE INTIMATE ENJOYMENT OF THE SPIRITUAL LIFE.

	Page
CHAP. I. Of Internal Converfation	73
CHAP. II. Of humble Submiffion to Reproof and Shame	78

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
CHAP. III. Of Peacefulness	83
CHAP. IV. Of Simplicity and Purity	85
CHAP. V. Of personal Attention	87
CHAP. VI. Of the Joy of a Good Con- science	89
CHAP. VII. Of the Love of J E S U S above All	92
CHAP. VIII. Of the Friendship of J E S U S	94
CHAP. IX. Of the Disconsolate State	97
CHAP. X. Of True Thankfulness for the Grace of G O D	103
CHAP. XI. Of the Small Number of those that love the Cross	106
CHAP. XII. Of the Necessity of bear- ing the Cross	109

B O O K T H E T H I R D. O F D I V I N E I L L U M I N A T I O N.

	Page
CHAP. I. Of the Blessedness of Internal Conversation with C H R I S T	119
CHAP.	

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
CHAP. II. That CHRIST, who is The Truth, speaketh to the Soul, without the Sound of Words; that His Instructions are to be heard with Humility; and that many regard them not	121
CHAP. III. The Soul imploring the Influence of Grace, is instructed to walk before GOD in Humility and Truth	125
CHAP. IV. Of the Power of Divine Love	129
CHAP. V. Of the Trial of True Love	134
CHAP. VI. That the Soul must not despair under the Infirmities of Nature, and the Suggestions of Evil Spirits	135
CHAP. VII. Of concealing the Grace of Devotion under the Veil of Humility	139
CHAP. VIII. That all Things are to be referred to GOD, as the ultimate End; and that the Service of GOD is the highest Honour, and the most perfect Freedom	145
CHAP. IX. That the good Desires of the Heart are to be carefully examin-	
* a 4	ed

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
ed and regulated ; and the evil subdued by continual Resistance	150
CHAP. X. Of meek Obedience, after the Example of JESUS CHRIST ; and of the awful Consideration of the Divine Judgments, as a Motive to an humble Opinion of Ourselves and our State in Grace	155
CHAP. XI. That our Desires must be expressed in Terms of absolute Resignation to the Divine Will	159
CHAP. XII. That True Comfort is to be found only in GOD	162
CHAP. XIII. That, in Conformity to the Example of CHRIST, the Miseries of this Fallen Life are to be borne with Patience and Resignation	165
CHAP. XIV. Of Personal Infirmary, and the Miseries of the present Life	170
[CHAP. XV.] That the Soul must seek her Repose only in GOD	173
CHAP. XV. That GOD always heareth the Prayer of the Humble	175
CHAP. XVI. Of the Thankful Remembrance	

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
membrance of the manifold Mercies of GOD	178
CHAP. XVII. Of Four Steps that lead to Liberty and Peace	181
CHAP. XVIII. Of avoiding a Curi- ous Inspection into the Conduct of others	185
CHAP. XIX. In what True Peace of Mind and Spiritual Perfection con- sist	186
CHAP. XX. That Self-love is the chief Obstruction to the Attainment of the Supreme Good	191
CHAP. XXI. That the Perverse Judg- ments and Cruel Censures of Men are not to be regarded	194
CHAP. XXII. Of Submission to GOD in the Hour of Tribulation, and Con- fidence in Returning Grace	195
CHAP. XXIII. That the Creator is to be found in Abstraction from the Creatures	201
CHAP. XXIV. Of Self-denial and the Renunciation of Animal Desire	204
	CHAP.

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
CHAP. XXV. Of the Instability of the Heart ; and of Directing the Intention to GOD alone	206
CHAP. XXVI. That the Soul which loves GOD, enjoys Him in All Things, and above All ; and in Him findeth Peace	208
CHAP. XXVII. Against the Fear of Man	212
CHAP. XXVIII. That Perfect Freedom can only be obtained by a Total Surrender of Self-will	214
CHAP. XXIX. Of Self-government in the Concerns of the present Life, and of having Recourse to GOD in all its Difficulties and Dangers	217
CHAP. XXX. Against Anxiety and Impetuosity in the Concerns of the World	218
CHAP. XXXI. That in Man there is no Good ; and that, therefore, he has nothing in which to glory	220
CHAP. XXXII. Of the Contempt of all Temporal Honour, and the Renunciation of all Human Comfort	223

CHAP.

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
CHAP. XXXIII. Of the Vanity of Human Learning	226
CHAP. XXXIV. Of Disengagedness from the Business of the World, and the Opinions of Men	229
CHAP. XXXV. Of Credulity in the Promises and Professions of Men	231
CHAP. XXXVI. Of Confidence in the Righteous Judgment of GOD, under the various Accusations of Men	235
CHAP. XXXVII. That all the Afflictions of the present State are to be patiently endured for the Hope of Eternal Life	239
CHAP. XXXVIII. Of the Desire of Eternal Life ; and of the Great Blessedness that is promised to those, who resolutely strive to obtain it	246
[CHAP. XXXVIII.] Of the Resignation of a Desolate Spirit to THE WILL OF GOD.	251
CHAP. XXXIX. That when we find ourselves incapable of the Higher Exercises of Devotion, we should with Humility	

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
Humility practise the Lower ; and account ourselves rather worthy of Affliction than Comfort	256
CHAP. XL. That the Grace of GOD dwells not with those that love the World	260
CHAP. XLI. Of the Different Characters and Operations of Nature and Grace	263
CHAP. XLII. That we must deny ourselves, take up the Cross of CHRIST, and follow Him	273
CHAP. XLIII. Against Extravagant Dejection, upon being sometimes betrayed by Human Weakness	277
CHAP. XLIV. Against the Vain and Presumptuous Inquiries of Reason into Subjects that are above the Comprehension of the Natural Man	280
CHAP. XLV. That all Hope and Confidence is to be placed in GOD alone	286

The END of the IMITATION of CHRIST.

C O N T E N T S.

The BOOK of the SACRAMENT.

	Page
CHAP. I. With what Reverence CHRIST is to be received	291
CHAP. II. Of The Love of GOD ma- nifested to Man in this Sacrament	300
CHAP. III. Of The Benefits of Fre- quent Communion	304
CHAP. IV. Of The Benefits bestowed on Devout Communicants	307
CHAP. V. Of The Duty preparatory to Communion	311
CHAP. VI. Of The Total Oblation of the Soul to GOD	314
CHAP. VII. That The Communion is not to neglected upon Trifling Pre- tences	318
CHAP. VIII. That The Body and Blood of CHRIST, and The Illumination of His Word and Spirit, are the Support and Guide of the Soul	322
CHAP.	

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
CHAP. IX. Of the Great Diligence necessary to a Preparation for receiving CHRIST	326
CHAP. X. That Union with CHRIST, is the Sole Desire of the Devout Communicant	329
CHAP. XI. Of the Great Fervour with which many desire The Communion of The Body and Blood of CHRIST	331
CHAP. XII. That the Grace of Devotion is obtained by Humility and Self-denial	332
CHAP. XIII. That we must lay open our Numerous Troubles and Wants before CHRIST, and humbly implore the Succours of His Grace	335
CHAP. XIV. Of the Ardent Desire of receiving CHRIST	337
CHAP. XV. That Man must suppress his vain Curiosity, and subject his Reason to the Obedience of Faith	339

The END of the Book of the SACRAMENT.

PREFACE.

P R E F A C E.

AS “The Christian’s Pattern” by Dean Stanhope, has claimed a place among the translations of this excellent book, and by an implicit admission has obtained general approbation; it will undoubtedly be asked, what occasion there was for attempting a new one. And to this question, no other answer, as an apology for the translation that is now offered to the publick, can be given, than that it was attempted in the hope of doing some justice to the sense of the original; which is almost lost in the loose paraphrase of Dean Stanhope, and almost deprived of its spirit by the literal and inelegant exactness of others.

With what degree of success this attempt has been prosecuted, must be left wholly to the judgment of the reader. It is hoped, however, that, where the Original allowed of some latitude in the translation, no sense is introduced, that will not be found coincident with the Author’s great principle, “The necessity of exchanging an earthly for a heavenly nature;” and that an apology will not be required, for giving the preference, in several instances of competition, to some ap-
a
posite

peculiar passage in the Divine Oracles, as the best illustration of the thought, and the most forcible manner of expressing it. As this preference has been given wherever an occasion was supposed to offer, the quotations from the Sacred Scriptures are more numerous than they are in the Original: and tho' all the quotations in the Original are taken from the Vulgate Bible, yet here they are generally taken from our English Bible; and the Vulgate is seldom retained, but where the force of the Author's sentiment depended upon the peculiar turn given to that translation.

In the third book of "The Imitation of CHRIST," and "The Book on the Sacrament," the division and the titles of the chapters are different, not only from all the translations, but from all the editions of the Original that have been consulted upon this occasion, except the late Paris edition published by M. J. VALART; which, as it is declared to have been formed upon an accurate collation of manuscripts and old printed copies, and, in consequence of that collation, purified from more than six hundred errors, has been chosen as the standard with respect to this translation.

Of the book itself, it will be difficult to shew the excellency and use, to those that have no sense of Spiritual Devotion, and unnecessary to those that have. The numerous editions

editions of the Original, however, and the numerous translations of it into the different languages of all the nations professing Christianity, whether as Protestants or Papists, that have been continually published for near three hundred years; is a testimony of approbation, of which few human compositions can boast, and which the advocates for libertinism, tho' they may pretend to despise it, cannot but secretly venerate.

But, besides the professors and patrons of profane wit and unrestrained pleasure, there are some sober minds, who, because they live in a nation where Christianity is professed, have assumed the character of Christians; and being perfectly pleased with themselves, and satisfied with following the regular rotation of formal duties, are offended at every attempt to convince them, that “there is something still needful,” of much higher importance than the most minute conformity to the ceremonies of external worship. They have also assumed the character of Protestants—an honourable character, if formed upon Christian Principles, and supported with a Christian Spirit!—and when motives to the attainment of a Divine Life urged by a Roman Catholick, are offered to their consideration, their displeasure is heightened; and the offer is rejected, not only with indignation, but with a dread of all the evils which they have been used to

a 2 associate

affociate with the idea of a Roman Catholic. Like those of old, who asked, “ If any thing “ good could come out of Nazareth;” they are ready to exclaim, “ Can precepts of truth “ and holiness proceed from the cell of a “ monk?” And no less danger is apprehended, than of being artfully betrayed into the trammels of a spiritual director; or artfully worked up to such a rage of ill-humour with themselves and the world, as to be driven into the irremeable gate of a cloister.

The Author of This Book had no design, that terminates in any of the changeable forms and perishing interests of the present life. As a Roman Catholick, he has himself performed the office of a spiritual director; and it is to bring and leave his disciple, where he leaves himself, under The Conduct of THE ONLY GUIDE to Life, Light, Holiness, and Peace, THE SPIRIT OF GOD. In his own person he makes this address: “ O GOD, “ Who art THE TRUTH, make me One “ with Thee in Everlasting Love! I am often “ weary of reading, and weary of hearing: “ in Thee alone, is the sum of my desires! “ Let all teachers be silent; let the whole “ creation be dumb before Thee; and do “ Thou only speak unto my soul! * ” And in another place, in the character of that dis-

* Book I. chap. iii. § 3. page 8.

ciple of whom he has been the director, he says: “ *Speak, LORD; for thy servant heareth.* Let not Moses speak to me, nor any of the Prophets. But do Thou, O LORD my GOD, ETERNAL TRUTH! speak to my soul; lest, being only outwardly warned, but not inwardly quickened, I die, and be found unfruitful; lest the Word heard and not obeyed, known and not loved, professed and not kept, turn to my condemnation! *Speak, therefore, LORD, for thy servant heareth: Thou, only, hast The Words of Eternal Life!* O speak to the comfort of my soul, to the Renovation of my Heavenly Nature, and to the eternal praise and glory of Thy Own Holy Name! *”

As a Roman Catholick also, he had renounced the world, and devoted his time and attention to the purification of his spirit in the retirement of a cloister: and even in a cloister, he frequently deploras the worldly and sensual life of many that were immured with him; and directs man to a more sacred retirement, his own heart, to discover the evil of his fallen nature, and the manifestations of that Divine Power which is his Only Redemption from it. It is the renunciation of The Spirit of the World, and a continual dependence upon THE SPIRIT OF GOD as

* Book III. chap. ii. § 2. 3. p. 137, 138.

The Principle of all Truth and Goodness, that are the duties he enjoins, and the perfection he requires; and if this perfection is attained in the midst of the tumultuous scenes of life, it can suffer no abatement, because it was not attained in the retirement of a cloister. What he sought himself in a state of retirement, he tells us in these words: “ It is not the peculiar habit, “ the tonsure, or any alteration merely external, but a change of heart, and an entire mortification of the passions, that are “ the indispensable qualifications for such a “ state; and he that seeks any thing in it, “ but The Glory of GOD in the purification of his own soul, will meet only with “ disappointment and trouble, anxiety and “ remorse.*”

Retirement into a cloister, is not a precept of the Christian Faith: but the renunciation of the world, is one of its essential duties; and universally enjoined, as an indispensable condition of becoming Faithful Followers of HIM, Who, as our Exemplar, as well as our Redeemer, had Himself renounced and overcome the world: and if this duty had been universally fulfilled by those who have assumed the sacred character of his Faithful Followers, retirement into a cloister would never have been known.

* Book I. chap. xvii. § 2. page 42.

But we are to consider, what has been the state of Christianity since it became national; and how deplorably all Christian nations have fallen from The Spirit and Power of The Gospel of CHRIST. What has any Christian nation ever aimed at, but an emulation of the wealth and splendour, the policy, the luxury, the refined vanity, the pride, pomp, and power, of Pagan Greece and Rome? What does any Christian nation now seek, but even to outdo Pagan Greece and Rome, in all the frantick excesses of a Worldly Spirit; devoting all the faculties of an immortal soul, and all the short time of its probation for eternity, to the diversification of the scenes of sensual pleasure, or to the accumulation of poisonous riches, which become proportionably more deadly the more they are collected and engrossed; violating the sacred obligations of Justice and Charity, to seize each other's possessions; and calling in the aid of hell, to secure the plunder with every murdering engine of War? Now he, who, in such a state of Christianity, labours to fulfil the precept, and follow The Example of his REDEEMER, in the renunciation and conquest of the world; will find, that he must labour in an abstraction, not less painful in itself, nor less unfriendly to worldly interests, than retirement into a cloister, in whatever formidable light his imagination may have painted it.

If we did not know what men may do and say, with The Gospel in their hands, and THE SUN OF RIGHTEOUSNESS still shedding His Vital Beams upon them; we should wonder—that those, who, at their baptism, have “solemnly renounced the world, the flesh, and the devil;” and who, in the public service of the Church, hear the precepts of their REDEEMER, “to overcome the world, deny themselves, take up their daily cross, and follow Him;” and, in the use of its Liturgy, repeat the most earnest prayers for “the continual influences of THE HOLY SPIRIT, to enable them to fulfil those precepts, because they cannot do it by their own strength,”—we should wonder, that such persons should be the most violent in exclaiming against books like this, as the ravings of enthusiasm, or the dreams of monkish ignorance, because they call men to “the renunciation of the world, self-denial, watchfulness, and prayer, and to a continual unreserved dependence upon The Illuminating and Sanctifying Influences of THE HOLY SPIRIT.”

The Author had a profound knowledge of the Spiritual Life; such as is not to be acquired, but by a mind truly devoted, and long inured, to spiritual exercises. He stops not at calling men to the renunciation of the world, self-denial, watchfulness, and prayer; but
leads

leads them on to that Naked Faith, Absolute Resignation, and Pure Love, which are the strength and beauty of The Regenerate Nature—The Nature that can alone enter into Heaven, because it comes out of Heaven; that can alone love, desire, and unite with GOD, because it is born of GOD! His instructions, therefore, are founded upon this great principle, which is also the foundation of the precepts of the Gospel—that “ man has lost
 “ The Divine Life born of GOD, and is
 “ fallen into an earthly, animal, and sensual
 “ Life of This World; a Life of darkness,
 “ impurity, impotence, and misery; which
 “ must be abandoned, that his First Divine
 “ Life may be regenerated in him by The
 “ Operation of THE HOLY GHOST.” And as it would be in vain to offer such instructions, to those who think they do not want them; so it is in vain, that CHRIST once preached to men Himself, and has continued preaching to them by His HOLY SPIRIT, while they shun, or disguise, or misapply every thing, that would bring them to a sense of the darkness, impurity, impotence, and misery, of their Life in This World.

Men, in their fallen state, are destitute of happiness, restless and insatiable in their desires of it, and always seeking it, where it cannot possibly be found, in themselves and their earthly life; and men, in these days of
 Fallen

Fallen Christianity, are only in a better state, because some real tho' alienated goodness is produced, by the efforts of that Divine Life which is struggling for Redemption within them. They know, their MASTER has declared, that "*there is but ONE WHO IS GOOD, and that is GOD;*" and yet, they know not, or will not know, that whatever Goodness lives in intelligent natures, from the Highest Angel to the lowest of Mankind, is solely The Manifestation of THE PRESENCE AND POWER OF HIM, WHO ALONE IS GOOD. All the Light and Goodness, therefore, which The Mercy of GOD, notwithstanding their repugnancy, still preserves within them as their Call to Heaven, they arrogate as the light of Human Reason, and the attainments of Human Virtue; and confiding wholly in themselves, and contented with the forms of Godliness instead of The Power, they stifle the sense of their inherent darkness, impurity, impotence, and misery, by mingling in the cares and pleasures of a vain and busy world. But they are questions that deserve the most serious consideration, whether CHRIST is not The Saviour of men, only by being formed within them as The Living Power of knowing and fulfilling The Will of GOD: and whether those that reject Him as this Inward Saviour, Who alone, by The Manifestation of His Own Nature, Life, and Spirit

rit in the soul, can transform selfish, sensual, proud, and malignant spirits, into Angels of Patience, Humility, Meekness, Purity, and Love, and from “*children of wrath*” make them “*children of THE LIVING GOD;*” reject Him less, than the Scribes and Pharisees, who blasphemed, persecuted, and put Him to death.

“Some,” says the Author, speaking in the person of CHRIST, “place their religion
“in books; some, in images; and some, in
“the pomp and splendour of external wor-
“ship: these honour me *with their lips, but*
“*their heart is far from me.* But there are
“some, who with illuminated understandings
“discern the Glory which man has lost, and
“with pure affections pant for its Recovery:
“these hear and speak, with reluctance, of
“the cares and pleasures of the present life;
“and even lament the necessity of admini-
“stering to the wants of animal nature: these
“hear and understand what THE HOLY
“SPIRIT speaketh in their heart; exhorting
“them, to withdraw their affection from
“*things on earth, and set it on things above;*
“to abandon this fallen world, and day and
“night aspire after Re-union with GOD.*”

As the fittest key to unlock the treasures of this inestimable Book, and lay them open to

* Book III. chap. iii. § 8. page 145.

common use, it may be necessary to shew, in general, The Ground and Nature of CHRISTIAN REDEMPTION; and it can scarcely be done with more power of conviction, than in the following extracts from the writings of a Great Divine, whose name is not mentioned, because names have been known to endear Error, and to keep the eye shut from the Sight of Truth.

The Fall of man into the life and state of This World, is the Whole Ground of his Redemption; and a Real Birth of CHRIST in the soul, is the Whole Nature of it. To convince man of his Fall as the Ground of his Redemption, it is not necessary to appeal to the history which Moses has given of it; because Moses's history of the Fall is not the proof of it, and because a meer historical knowledge of the Fall would not do man any real good. Moses has recorded the Death of the first man, and of many of his descendents; but the proof that man is Mortal, lies not in Moses's history, but in the known nature of man, and the world from which he has his life. Thus, tho' Moses has recorded the time and manner of the Fall, yet there is no more occasion to have recourse to his history to prove it, than to prove that man is “ a poor,
 “ weak, vain, distressed, corrupt, depraved,
 “ selfish, self-tormenting, perishing creature;
 “ and that the world is a sad mixture of ima-
 “ ginary

“ ginary good, and real evil, a mere scene of
 “ vanity, vexation, and misery!” This is the
 known nature and condition both of man and
 the world; and every man is in himself an
 irresistible proof that he is in a fallen state.
 An attempt, therefore, to convince man of
 his Fall, as the Ground of his Redemption,
 must be an attempt to do that which misfor-
 tunes, sickness, pain, and the approach of
 death, have a natural tendency to do, to con-
 vince him of the Vanity, Poverty, and Misery,
 of his Life and Condition in this World; and
 how impossible it is, that a GOD, Who has
 nothing in Himself but Infinite Goodness and
 Infinite Happiness, should bring forth a race
 of intelligent creatures, that have neither
 Natural Goodness, nor Natural Happiness.

Man, in his First State, as he came forth
 from GOD, must have been absolutely free
 from all Vanity, Want, or Distress, of any
 kind, from any thing either within or with-
 out him; a God-like Perfection of Nature,
 and a painful Distressed Nature, stand in the
 utmost Contrariety to one another. But man
 has lost his First Divine Life in GOD: every
 thing that we know of GOD, and every thing
 that we know of man, of his birth, his life,
 and death, is a continual irresistible proof that
 man is in a fallen state. The human infant
 just come out of the womb, is a picture of
 such deformity, nakedness, weakness, and
 helpless

helpless distress, as is not to be found amongst the home-born animals of this world. The chicken has its birth from no sin, and, therefore, comes forth in beauty; it runs and pecks, as soon as its shell is broken: the calf and the lamb go both to play as soon as the dam is delivered of them; they are pleased with themselves, and please the eye that beholds their frolick state, and beauteous clothing: whilst the new-born babe of a woman, that is to have an upright form; that is to view the heavens, and worship the GOD that made them; lies, for months, in gross ignorance, weakness, and impurity; as sad a spectacle when he first breathes the life of this world, as when in the agonies of death he breathes his last. What is all this, but the strongest proof, that man is the only creature that belongs not to this world, but is fallen into it through sin; and that, therefore, his birth, in such distress, bears all these marks of shame and weakness? Had he been originally of this world, this world would have done the highest honour to its highest creature; and he must have begun his life in greater perfection than any other animal, and brought with him a more beautiful clothing than the finest lillies of the field. But when the human infant has at length acquired strength, and begins to act for himself, he soon becomes a more pitiable object than when crying in the cradle. “ The
“ strength

“ strength of his life, is a meer strength of
 “ wild passions; his reason is craft and self-
 “ ish subtilty; he loves and hates only as
 “ flesh and blood prompt him; and jails and
 “ gibbets cannot keep him from theft and
 “ murder. If he is rich, he is tormented with
 “ pride and ambition; if poor, with want and
 “ discontent: be he which he will, sooner or
 “ later, disordered passions, disappointed lusts,
 “ fruitless labour, pains and sickness, will
 “ tear him from this world, in such travail as
 “ his mother felt, when she brought forth the
 “ sinful animal.” Now all this evil and misery
 are the natural and necessary effects of his
 birth in the bestial flesh and blood of this
 world; and there is nothing in his natural
 state, that can put a stop to it; he must be
 evil and miserable, as long as he has only the
 life of this world in him. Therefore, the ab-
 solute certainty of man’s fall, and the absolute
 Necessity of a New Birth to redeem him,
 are truths, independently of Scripture, plain
 to a demonstration.

No creature can come from the hands of
 GOD, into a State of any Ignorance of any
 thing that is proper to be known by it; this
 is as impossible, as for GOD to have an envi-
 ous or evil will. Now all Right and Natural
 Knowledge, in whatever creature it is, is
 Sensible, Intuitive, and its Own Evidence;
 and Opinion, Reasoning, or Doubting, can
 only

only then begin, when the creature has lost its First Right and Natural State, and is got somewhere, and become somewhat, that it cannot tell what to make of. Reasoning, Doubt, and Perplexity, in any creature, are the effect of some Fall or Departure from its First State of Nature; and shew, that it wants, and is seeking, something that belongs to its Nature, but knows not how to come at it. The beasts seek not after Truth; a plain proof, that it has no Relation to them, no Suitableness to their Nature, nor ever belonged to them. Man is in quest of it, in perplexity about it, cannot come at it; takes lies to be Truth, and Truth to be lies: a plain proof, both that he has it not, and yet has had it; was created in it, and for it: for “no creature can seek for any thing, but that which
 “has been lost, and is wanted; nor could
 “man form the least idea of it, but because it
 “has belonged to him, and ought to be his.”

Now suppose man to come into the world, with this Chief Difference from other creatures, that he is at a loss to find out what he is, how he is to live, and what he is to seek as his Chief Happiness; what he is to own of a **GOD**, of Providence, Religion, &c.; suppose him to have Faculties that put him upon this Search, and no Faculties that can satisfy his Inquiry; and what can we suppose more miserable in himself, and more unworthy of a
 Good

GOOD CREATOR? Therefore, if we will not suppose, that GOD has been good to all creatures, and given every animal its Proper Light of Nature, except Man; we must be forced to own, that man has lost the True Light and Perfection of his Nature, which GOD at first gave him.

GOD is, in Himself, Infinite Truth, Infinite Goodness, and Infinite Happiness; but man, in his present earthly birth and life, has neither Truth, Goodness, nor Happiness: therefore, his Present State of Life could not be brought forth by that GOD, Who is all Truth, Goodness, and Happiness. Thus every man, that believes in a Creator Infinitely Perfect, is under a Necessity of believing the Whole Ground of CHRISTIAN REDEMPTION; namely, that man has lost that Perfection of Life which he had at first from his Creator.

Had not a Divine Life at first been in man, he would be now at the same distance from Truth and Goodness, and as incapable of forming the least Thought or Desire of them, as the beasts of the field; and would have nothing to do, but to look to himself, live to his earthly nature, and make the most of this world: for this is all the Wisdom and Goodness, that an Earthly Nature is capable of, whether it be a man, or a fox. The certainty of the fact, of man's First Divine Life, is

b

all;

all; nothing more need be enquired after: for on This Ground stands all his Comfort; hence it is, that in Faith and Hope he can look up to GOD as his Father, to Heaven as his Native Country, and on himself as a stranger and a pilgrim upon earth.

For it is a certain truth, that fallen, earthly, and corrupt, as human nature is, there is, in the soul of every man, THE FIRE, AND LIGHT, AND LOVE OF GOD, tho' lodged in a state of hiddenness and inactivity, till something human or Divine, Distress or Grace, or both, discover its life within us.

We were no more created to be in the Sorrows, Burdens, and Anguish of this earthly Life, than the Angels were created to be in the Wrath and Darknes of Hell: it is as contrary to The Will and Goodness of GOD towards us, that we are out of Paradise, as it is contrary to The Designs and Goodness of GOD towards the Angels, that some of them are out of Heaven, prisoners of darknes. How absurd and even blasphemous would it be, to say, with the Church and the Scriptures, that "we are Children of Wrath, and Born "in Sin," if we had That Nature, which GOD at first gave us? What a reproach upon GOD, to say, that this world is a valley of misery, a shadow of death, full of disorders, sorrows, and temptations, if This was an Original Creation, or That State of things
for

for which GOD created us? Is it not as consistent with the Goodness of GOD, to speak of the misery and disorder that Holy Angels find above, and of the Sorrows and Vanity of their Heavenly State; as to speak of the misery of men, and the sorrows and vanity of this world, if men and the world were in That Order, in which GOD at first had placed them? If GOD could make any place Poor and Vain, and create any beings into a State of Vanity and Vexation of Spirit, he might do so in All Places, and to All Beings.

“The Fall of man, therefore, into the life
 “ of this earthly world, is the Sole Ground
 “ of his wanting the Redemption which The
 “ Gospel offers.” Hence it is, that The Gospel has only One simple proposal of Certain Life, or Certain Death, to Man: of Life, if he will take the means of entering into The Kingdom of GOD; of Death, if he chuses to take up his Rest in The Kingdom of This World. This is the Simple Nature and Sole Drift of The Gospel: it means no more, than making known to man, that This World, and The Life of it, is his Fall and Separation from GOD and Happiness both here and hereafter; and that to be saved, or restored to GOD and Happiness, can only be obtained, by renouncing all Love and Adherence to the Things of This World. “All the Precepts, Threaten-
 “ ings, and Doctrines of The Gospel, mean
 b 2 “ nothing,

“ nothing, but to drive All Earthly-minded-
 “ nefs and Carnal Affections out of the foul;
 “ to call man from the Life, Spirit, and Goods
 “ of This World, to a Life of Faith and
 “ Hope, and Love, and Desire, of a New Birth
 “ from Heaven.”

To embrace The Gospel, is to enter, with
 all our hearts, into its terms of dying to All
 that is Earthly, both within us and without
 us: and, on the other hand, to place our
 Faith, and Hope, and Trust, and Satisfaction,
 in the Things of This World; is to reject
 The Gospel with our whole heart, spirit, and
 strength, as much as any Infidel can do, not-
 withstanding we make ever so many verbal
 assents to every thing that is recorded in the
 New Testament.

This, therefore, is the one, true, essential
 Distinction, between the Christian and the
 Infidel. The Infidel is a man of This World;
 wholly devoted to it; his Hope and Faith are
 set upon it; for where our Heart is, there,
 and there only, are our Hope and Faith:
 he has only such a Virtue, such a Goodness,
 and such a Religion, as entirely suits with the
 interests of flesh and blood, and keeps the soul
 happy in “ *the Lust of the Flesh, the Lust of*
 “ *the Eye, and the Pride of Life.*” This, and
 this alone, is Infidelity; a Total Separation
 from GOD, and a Removal of all Faith and
 Hope from HIM, into The Life of This World.
 It

It matters not, whether this Infidel be a Professor of the Gospel, a Disciple of Zoroaster, a Follower of Plato, a Jew, a Turk, or an Opposer of the Gospel History: this Difference of Opinions or Professions, alters not the matter; it is the Love of The World instead of GOD, that constitutes the Whole Nature of the Infidel.

On the other hand, the Christian renounces the world as his Horrid Prison; he dies to the will of flesh and blood, because it is Darknefs, Corruption, and Separation from GOD; he turns from all that is earthly, animal, and temporal, and stands in a continual Tendency of Faith, and Hope, and Prayer to GOD, to have a better Nature, a better Life and Spirit, born again into him from Above.

Where this Faith is, there is the Christian, the “*New Creature in CHRIST, born of The Word and Spirit of GOD:*” neither time nor place, nor any outward condition of birth and life, can hinder his Entrance into the Kingdom of GOD. But where this Faith is not, there is the True Complete Infidel, “*The Man of the Earth,*” the Unredeemed, the Rejecter of the Gospel, “*the Son of Perdition,*” that is “*dead in Trespasses and Sins, without CHRIST, an Alien from the Commonwealth of Israel, a Stranger to the Covenants of Promise, having no Hope, and without GOD in the World.*”

Men are apt to consider a Worldly Spirit only as an infirmity, or pardonable failure; but it is, indeed, The Great Apostasy from GOD and the Divine Life: it is not a Single Sin, but the Whole Nature of All Sin; that leaves no possibility of coming out of our fallen state, till it be totally renounced with all the strength of our hearts.

Our LORD says, “ *there is but One that is Good, and that is GOD.*” In the same strictness of expression it must be said, “ There is but One Life that is Good, and that is THE LIFE OF GOD AND HEAVEN:” Depart, in the least degree, from The Goodness of GOD, and you depart into evil; because nothing is good, but His Goodness. Choose any life, but THE LIFE OF GOD AND HEAVEN, and you choose Death; for Death is nothing else but the Loss of THE LIFE OF GOD. The creatures of this world, have but one life, and one good; and that is the life of this world: eternal beings have but one life, and one good; and that is THE LIFE OF GOD. The spirit of the soul is in itself nothing else but a Spirit breathed forth from GOD, that The Life of GOD, The Nature of GOD, The Working of GOD, The Tempers of GOD, might be manifested in it. GOD could not create man to have a will of his own, and a life of his own, different from The Life and Will that is in Himself; this is more impossible,

fible, than for a good tree to bring forth corrupt fruit: GOD can only delight in His Own Life, His Own Goodness, and His Own Perfections; and, therefore, cannot love, or delight, or dwell, in any creatures, but where His Own Goodness and Perfections are to be found: like can only unite with like, heaven with heaven, and hell with hell; and, therefore, **THE LIFE OF GOD** must be the life of the soul, if the soul is to unite with GOD. Hence it is, that All the Religion of fallen man, All the Methods of our Redemption, have only this One End, to take from us That Strange and Earthly Life we have gotten by the Fall, and to kindle again **THE LIFE OF GOD AND HEAVEN** in our souls: not to deliver us from that gross and sordid vice called Covetousness, which Heathens can condemn; but to take The Spirit of This World entirely from us.

This Spirit is the Whole Nature and Misery of our Fall; it keeps our souls in a state of Death; and, as long as it governs, makes it impossible for us to be “*Born again from*” **“ ABOVE.”** It is the greatest Blindness and Darkness of our nature, and keeps us in the grossest Ignorance both of heaven and hell; for tho’ they are both of them within us, yet we feel neither, while The Spirit of This World reigns in us. Light, and Truth, and the Gospel, so far as they concern Eternity,
b 4
are

are all empty sounds to the Worldly Spirit: his own good, and his own evil, govern all his hopes and fears; and, therefore, he can have no religion, or be farther concerned in it, than so far as it can be made serviceable to the Life of This World: he can know nothing of GOD; for he can know nothing, feel nothing, taste nothing, delight in nothing, but with earthly senses, and after an earthly manner. “*The Natural Man,*” saith the Apostle, “*receiveth not the Things of THE SPIRIT OF*” “*GOD; they are foolishness unto him: he cannot know them, because they are Spiritually*” “*discerned;*” that is, they can only be discerned by That Spirit, which he hath not: he can only contemplate them, as things foreign to himself; as so many changeable ideas, which he receives from books, or hearsay, and which become a bad nourishment of all his natural tempers: he is proud of his ability to discourse about them, and loses all Humility, all Love of GOD and man, thro’ a vain and haughty Contention for them. He stands at the same distance from a living perception of the Truth, as the man, that is born blind, does from a living perception of Light; Light must first be the birth of his own life, before he can enter into a real knowledge of it.”

“ The measure of our Life, is the measure
 “ of our knowledge; and as the Spirit of
 “ our Life worketh, so the spirit of our un-
 “ derstanding

“ derstanding conceiveth.” If our Will worketh with GOD, tho’ our natural capacity be ever so mean and narrow, we get a real knowledge of GOD, and Heavenly Truths; for every thing must feel that, in which it lives. But if our Will worketh with Satan, and The Spirit of This World, let our parts be ever so bright, our imaginations ever so soaring; yet all our Living Knowledge can go no higher or deeper, than the mysteries of iniquity, and the lusts of flesh and blood. For nothing feels, or tastes, or understands, or likes, or dislikes, but The Life that is in us; The Spirit that leads our Life, is The Spirit that forms our understanding. The mind is our eye, and all the faculties of the mind see every thing according to The State the mind is in. If Selfish Pride is The Spirit of our Life, every thing is only seen, and known, through this glass; every thing is dark, senseless, and absurd, to the Proud Man, but that which brings food to This Spirit: he understands nothing, feels nothing, tastes nothing, but as his Pride is made sensible of it, or capable of being affected with it. His Working Will, which is The Life of his soul, liveth and worketh only in the Element of Pride; and, therefore, what suits his Pride, is his only good; and what contradicts his Pride, is all the evil that he can feel or know: his wit, his parts, his learning, his advancement, his friends, his admirers,

admirers, his successes, his conquests, all these are the Only God and Heaven, that he has any Living Perception of: he indeed can talk of a Scripture God, a Scripture Christ, and Heaven; but these are only the ornamental furniture of his brain, whilst Pride is the God of his Heart. We are told, that "*GOD resisteth the Proud, and giveth Grace to the Humble.*" This is not to be understood, as if GOD, by an arbitrary will, only chose to deal thus with the Proud and Humble man: but the true ground is this; The Resistance is on the Part of man. Pride resisteth GOD, it rejecteth Him, it turneth from Him, and chooseth to worship and adore something else instead of Him; whereas Humility leaveth all for GOD, falls down before him, and opens the whole heart to receive Him: this is the only sense, in which "*GOD resisteth the Proud, and giveth Grace to the Humble.*" And thus it is in the true ground of every Good and Evil that rises up in us; we have neither Good nor Evil, but as it is the Natural Effect of the Working of our Own Will, either with, or against GOD. Consider the state of him, whose Working Will is under the Power of Wrath; he sees, and hears, and feels, and understands, and talks, wholly from the Light and Sense of Wrath. All his faculties are only so many faculties of Wrath; and he has no sense or knowledge, but what his enlight-

enlightened Wrath discovers to him. These instances are sufficient to shew, that The State of our Life governs the state of our mind, and forms the degree and manner of our understanding and knowledge; and that, therefore, there is no possibility of knowing GOD and Divine Truths, till our Life is Divine, and wholly dead to The Life and Spirit of This World.

The philosophers of old began all their Virtue, in a total Renunciation of the Spirit of This World: they saw, with the eyes of Heaven, that darkness was not more contrary to light, than The Wisdom of This World was contrary to the Spirit of Virtue; therefore, they allowed of no Progress in Virtue, but so far as a man had overcome himself, and The Spirit of This World. This gave a Divine solidity to all their instructions, and proved them to be masters of True Wisdom. But the doctrine of THE CROSS OF CHRIST, the last, the highest, the finishing stroke given to The Spirit of This World, that speaks more in One Word than all the philosophy of voluminous writers; is yet professed by those, who are in more friendship with The World, than was allowed to the disciples of Pythagoras, Socrates, Plato, or Epictetus.

Nay, if those antient sages were to start up amongst us with their Divine Wisdom, they would bid fair to be treated by the Sons of
the

the Gospel, if not by some Fathers of the Church, as dreaming enthusiasts. But it is a standing truth, that “*The World can only love its own, and Wisdom can only be justified of her Children.*” The Heaven-born Epictetus told one of his scholars, that “then he might first look upon himself, as having made some true proficiency in Virtue, when The World took him for a fool;” an oracle like that, which said, “*The Wisdom of This World is Foolishness with GOD.*”

If it be asked, what is the Apostasy of these last times, or whence is the Degeneracy of the present Christian Church, it is all the progeny of a Worldly Spirit. If here we see open wickedness, there only forms of godliness; if here superficial holiness, political piety, crafty prudence; there haughty sanctity, partial zeal, envious orthodoxy; if, almost every where, we find a Jewish blindness, and hardness of heart, and the Church trading with the Gospel, as visibly as the old Jews bought and sold beasts in their Temple; all this is only so many forms and proper fruits of the Worldly Spirit. This is the great chain with which the Devil enslaves mankind; and every son of man is held captive in it, till through, and by, THE SPIRIT OF CHRIST he breaks from it. Nothing else can deliver him from it; nothing leaves The World, nothing renounces it, nothing can possibly overcome it, but

but THE SPIRIT OF CHRIST. Hence it is, that many learned men, with all the rich furniture of their brain, live and die slaves to The Spirit of This World; and can only differ from gross worldlings, as the Scribes and Pharisees differed from publicans and sinners: it is because THE SPIRIT OF CHRIST is not the One Only Thing that is the Desire of their hearts; and, therefore, their learning only works in and with The Spirit of This World, and becomes itself no small part of the “Vanity of vanities.”

“Nothing does, or can, keep GOD out of
 “the soul, or hinder His Holy Union with
 “it, but its desire turned from him;” for
 with whatever the Will worketh, with that
 only the soul liveth, whether it be GOD or
 the creature: whatever the soul desireth, that
 is the fuel of its fire; and as its fuel is, so
 is the flame of its Life. A will given up to
 earthly enjoyments, is at grass with Nebu-
 chadnezzar, and has One Life with the beasts
 of the field; for Earthly Desires keep up the
 Same Life in a man and an ox. For the one
 only reason, why the animals of this world
 have no sense or knowledge of GOD, is be-
 cause they cannot form any other than Earthly
 Desires, and so can only have an Earthly
 Life: when, therefore, a man wholly turneth
 his Will to Earthly Desires, he dies to the
 excellency of his natural state, and may be
 said

said only to live, and move, and have his be-
 ing in The Life of This World, as the beasts
 have. Earthly food, &c. only desired, and
 used, for the support of the earthly body, is
 suitable to man's present condition, and the
 order of nature: but when the Desire and
 Delight of the soul are set upon Earthly
 Things, the humanity is degraded, is fallen
 from GOD, and The Life of the Soul is made
 as earthly and bestial, as the life of the body;
 “ for the creature can be neither higher nor
 “ lower, neither better nor worse, than as its
 “ Will worketh. What it desireth, that it
 “ taketh; and of that it eateth and liveth:
 “ wherever, and in whatever, the Will
 “ chooseth to dwell and delight, that be-
 “ cometh the soul's Food, its Condition, its
 “ Body, its Clothing, and Habitation. No-
 “ thing doth, nor can, go with a man into
 “ heaven, nothing followeth him into hell,
 “ but that in which the Will dwelt, with
 “ which it was fed, nourished, and clothed,
 “ in This Life. Death can make no Altera-
 “ tion of This State of the Will; it only takes
 “ off the outward, worldly, covering of flesh
 “ and blood, and forces the soul to see, and
 “ feel, and know, what a Life, what a State,
 “ Food, Body, and Habitation, its own
 “ Working Will has brought forth for it.
 “ Is there, therefore, any thing in life that
 “ deserves a thought, but how to keep this
 “ Work-

“ Working of our Will in a Right State;
 “ and to get that PURITY OF HEART, which
 “ alone can see, and know, and find, and pos-
 “ sess GOD? Is there any thing so frightful
 “ as This Worldly Spirit, which turns the
 “ soul from GOD; makes it a House of
 “ Darknefs; and feeds it with the Food of
 “ Time, at the Expence of All the Riches of
 “ Eternity?”

Now as the Whole Nature of the Gospel
 Redemption means nothing, but the one, true,
 and only possible Way, of delivering man from
 All the Evil of his Fall—a Fall demonstrable
 to the senses and understanding of every man,
 by every height and depth of nature, by every
 kind of evil sin and misery in the world, by
 every thing he knows of GOD, himself, and
 the world he lives in; Christianity is not only
 the most desirable thing that the heart of man
 can think of, but the most intelligible, and
 even self-evident. It requires not the aid of
 Learning for its support; it stands upon a
 Foundation superiour to Human Learning, and
 may be the Sure Possession of every Plain Man,
 who has sense enough to know, whether he is
 happy or unhappy, good or evil. For this
 natural knowledge, if adhered to, is every
 man's Sure Guide to that One Salvation
 preached by The Gospel; which Gospel stands
 in no more need of Learning and Critical Art
 now, than it did when CHRIST was preach-
 ing

ing it upon earth. How absurd would it have been for any Critics in Greek and Hebrew, to have followed CHRIST and his Apostles, as necessary explainers of their Words, which called for nothing in the hearers, but Penitent Hearts turned to GOD; and declared, that “*They only who were of GOD, could bear the Word of GOD!*” If none but Learned men have the True Fitness to understand the Word of Scripture, and the Plain man is to receive it from them; how must he know, which are the Scholars that have the Right Knowledge? Whence is he to have his information? For no one need be told, that, ever since Learning has borne rule in the church, Learned Doctors have contradicted and condemned each other, in every Essential Point of the Christian Doctrine: thousands of Learned men tell the illiterate, they are lost in this or that Church; and thousands of Learned men tell them, they are lost if they leave it. If, therefore, Christianity is in the Hands of Scholars, how must the Plain man come at it? Must he, though unable to understand Scripture for want of Learning, tell which Learned man is in the right, and which is not? If so, the Unlearned man must have far the greatest Ability, since he is to do That for Scholars, which they cannot do for Themselves.

But Christian Redemption is GOD’S MERCY TO ALL MANKIND; and every Fallen man,
as

as such, has a Fitness or Capacity to lay hold of it. It has no dependence upon times and places, or the ages and several conditions of the world, or any outward circumstance of life; as the First man partook of it, so must the Last: the Learned Linguist, the blind, the deaf and dumb, have but One and the Same Common Way of finding Life in it; and he that writes large commentaries upon the Bible, must be saved by Something full as Different from book-knowledge, as he who can neither write nor read.

For This Salvation, which is GOD's Mercy to the Fallen Soul of man, merely as Fallen, must be Something that meets every man; and to which every man, as Fallen, has Something that directs him to turn. For as the Fall of man is the Reason of this Mercy, so the Fall must be the Guide to it; the Want must shew the Thing that is wanted. And, therefore, The Manifestation of this One Salvation, or Mercy to man, must have a Nature suitable, not to this or that great Reader of History, or able Critic in Hebrew Roots and Greek Phrases, but suitable to the Common State and Condition of Every Son of Adam: it must be Something as grounded in human nature, as the Fall itself is; which wants no Art to make it known, but to which the Common Nature of man is the Sure and Only Guide, in one man as well as another. Now
c
this

this Something, which is thus obvious to every man, and which opens The Way to Christian Redemption in every soul, is “ A Sense of the
 “ Vanity and Misery of this World; and a
 “ Prayer of Faith and Hope to GOD, to be
 “ raised to a Better State.”

In this Sense, to which every man's own Nature leads him, lies the Whole of man's Salvation; here the Mercy of GOD, and the Misery of man, are met together; here the Fall and the Redemption kiss each other. This is the Christianity which is as old as the Fall; which alone saved the First man, and can alone save the Last. This is it, on which hang all the Law and the Prophets, and which fulfils them both; for they have only this End, to turn man from the Lusts of this Life, to a Desire, and Faith, and Hope of a better. Thus does the Whole of Christian Redemption, considered on the part of man, stand in the same Degree of Nearness and Plainness to All Mankind; it is as simple and plain, as the Feeling our Own Evil and Misery; and as natural, as the Desire of being saved and delivered from it.

This Desire, and Faith, and Hope, of A NEW LIFE BORN OF GOD, as our only possible Redemption and Salvation, is The Spirit of Prayer, that is as opposite to the Spirit of This World, as Heaven is to hell: the one goes upwards with the Same Strength as the
 other

other goes downwards; the one espouses and unites us to CHRIST and GOD, with the Same Certainty, as the other betroths and weds us to an Earthly Nature. The Spirit of Prayer is a pressing forth of the soul out of this Earthly Life; it is a stretching, with All its Desire, after THE LIFE OF GOD; it is a leaving, as far as it can, All its Own Spirit, to receive A Spirit from Above, to be One Life, One Love, One Spirit with CHRIST IN GOD. This Prayer, which is an emptying itself of all its Own lusts and natural tempers, and an opening itself for The Light and Love of GOD to enter into it, is the Prayer in “ *The Name* “ of CHRIST,” to which nothing is denied; for The Love which GOD bears to the soul, His Eternal Never-ceasing Desire to enter into it, to dwell in it, and open The Birth of His Holy WORD and SPIRIT in it, stays no longer, than till the heart opens to receive Him: for “ nothing does, or can, keep GOD out of the “ soul, or hinder His Holy Union with it, but “ the Desire of the Heart turned from Him.”

What, therefore, is so necessary for man, as, with All his Strength, to turn from every thing, that is not GOD, and His Holy Will; and with All the Desire, Delight, and Longing of the Heart, to give up himself wholly to The Life, Light, and Spirit of GOD; pleased with nothing in This World, but as it gives time, and place, and occasions, of doing

and being That, which his Heavenly Father would have him to do, and be; seeking for no Happiness from This Earthly Fallen Life, but That of Overcoming All its Spirit and Tempers?

To conclude: In the full and true knowledge of The Greatness of our Fall, and The Greatness of our Redemption, lie all the reasons of a deep Humility, Penitence, and Self-denial; and also all the motives and incitements to a most hearty, sincere, and total Conversion to GOD: and every one is necessarily more or less a True Penitent, and more or less Truly Converted to GOD, according as he is more or less deeply or inwardly Sensible of these Truths. And till these two great Truths have both awakened and enlightened our minds, all Reformation and pretence to Amendment, is but a dead and superficial thing; a mere garment of hypocrisy, to hide us from ourselves and others.

Nothing can truly awaken a sinner, but a True Sense of the Deep Possession and Power that Sin has in him. When he sees, that Sin begins with his Being, that it rises up in the Effences of his Nature, and lives in the First Forms of his Life; and that he lies thus chained and barred up in the very jaws of death and hell, as unable to alter his own state as to create another creature; when, with this knowledge, he sees that the Free Grace
of

of GOD has provided him a Remedy equal to his Distress; that He has given him the Holy Blood and Life of JESUS CHRIST, the True Son of GOD, to enter as deep into his Soul as Sin has entered, to change the First Forms and Essences of his Life, and bring forth in them a New Birth of a Divine Nature, that is to be an Immortal Image of THE HOLY TRINITY, everlastingly safe, enriched, and blessed, in the Bosom of FATHER, SON, AND HOLY GHOST; when a man once truly knows and feels these two Truths, there seems to be no more that you need do for him. You can tell him of no Humility and Penitence, or Self-abasement, but what is less than his own heart suggests to him; Humility can only be feigned or false, before this Conviction: he can now no more take any degree of Good to himself, than assume any Share in the creation of Angels; and all Pride or Self-esteem of any kind, seems to him to contain as great a Lye in it, as if he was to say, that he helped to create himself.

You need not tell him, that he must turn unto GOD with “ *all his Strength, all his Heart, all his Soul, and all his Spirit;*” for all that he can offer unto GOD, seems to him already less than the least of His Mercies towards him. He has so seen The Exceeding Love of GOD in the Manner and Degree of his REDEMPTION, that it would be the
c 3
greatest

greatest pain to him, to do any thing but upon a motive of Divine Love: as his soul has found GOD to be All Love; so it has but One Desire, and that is, to be itself All Love of GOD.

This is the Conviction and Conversion that necessarily arises from a right understanding of these Truths: the soul is thereby wholly Consecrated to GOD; and can like, or love, or do nothing, but what it can, some way or other, turn into a Service of Love towards Him: but where these Truths are not known, or not acknowledged; there it is not to be wondered at, if Religion has no Root, that is able to bring forth its proper Fruits. And if the Generality of Christians are a number of dead, superficial, Consenters to the History of Scripture doctrines; as unwilling to have The Spirit, as to part with The Form of their Religion, loth to hear of any kind of Self-denial, fond of Worldly Ease, Indulgence, and Riches, unwilling to be called to The Perfection of the Gospel, professing and practising Religion merely as the Fashion and Custom of the place they are in requires; if some rest in outward Forms, others in a certain Orthodoxy of opinions; if some expect to be saved by the goodness of the Sect they are of, others by a certain Change of their Outward Behaviour; if some content themselves with a Lukewarm Spirit, and others

others depend upon Their Own Works; these are Delusions that must happen to all, who do not know, in some good degree, the True Nature of their own Fallen Soul, and what Kind of Regeneration alone can save them.

But all these errors, delusions, and false rests, are cut up by the Root, as soon as a man knows the True Reason and Necessity of his wanting so GREAT A SAVIOUR. For he that knows the Essences of his Soul to be so many Essences of Sin, which form Sin as they form his Life; entirely incapable of producing Any Good, till a Birth from GOD has arisen in them; can neither place his Redemption where it is not, nor seek it coolly and negligently where it is.

For knowing that it is the Hell within his own nature, that only wants to be destroyed, he is intent only upon bringing Destruction upon That; and this secures him from False Religion.

And knowing that this Inward Hell cannot be destroyed, unless GOD becomes his REDEEMER, or REGENERATOR, in the Essences of his soul; this makes him believe all, expect all, and hope all, from his Saviour JESUS CHRIST alone.

And knowing, that All this Redemption, or Salvation, is to be brought about in the Inmost Ground and Depth of his Heart; this makes him always apply to GOD, as the

GOD of his Heart: and, therefore, what he offers to GOD, is his own Heart; and this keeps him always Spiritually alive, wholly employed and intent upon the True Work of Religion, the fitting and preparing his Heart for all the Operations of GOD's HOLY SPIRIT upon it. And so he is a True Inward Christian, who, as Our Blessed LORD speaks, has “ *The Kingdom of GOD within him;*” where the State and Habit of his Heart continually, thankfully, “ WORSHIPS THE FATHER IN SPIRIT AND IN TRUTH.”

The ingenious and pious Author of THE AMARANTH, a Collection of Religious Poems, printed 1767, gives the following Account of THOMAS à KEMPIS.

“ All that I have been able to learn in
“ Germany, upon good authority, concerning
“ THOMAS à KEMPIS, is as follows: He
“ was born at Kempis, or Kempen, a small
“ walled town in the duchy of Cleves, and
“ diocese of Cologne. His family name was
“ Hamerlein, which signifies in the German
“ language “ a little hammer.” We find also
“ that his parents were named John and
“ Gertrude Hamerlein. He lived chiefly in
“ the monastery of Mount St. Agnes; where
“ his effigy, together with a prospect of the
“ monastery, was engraven on a plate of cop-
“ per that lies over his body. The said mon-
“ astery is now called Bergh-Clooster; or, as
“ we might say in English, Hill-Cloyster:
“ many strangers in their travels visit it.

“ KEMPIS was certainly one of the best and
“ greatest men since the primitive ages. His
“ book OF THE IMITATION OF CHRIST has
“ seen near forty editions in the original Latin,
“ and above sixty translations have been made
“ from it into modern languages.

“ Our

“ Our Author died August 8, 1471, aged
“ ninety-two years. He had no manifest in-
“ firmities of old age, and retained his eye-
“ sight perfect to the last.

“ In the engraving on copper above-men-
“ tioned, and lying over his grave, is repre-
“ sented a person respectfully presenting to
“ him a label, on which is written a verse to
“ this effect:

“ O! where is PEACE? for thou its paths hast
“ trod.”

“ To which KEMPIS returns another label,
“ inscribed as follows:

“ In POVERTY, RETIREMENT, and with
“ GOD.”

“ He was a canon regular of Augustins, and
“ sub-prior of Mount St. Agnes' monastery.
“ He composed his treatise OF THE IMITA-
“ TION OF CHRIST in the sixty-first year of
“ his age, as appears from a note of his own
“ writing in the library of his convent.”

OF THE
Imitation of Christ.

BOOK THE FIRST:
PREPARATORY INSTRUCTIONS FOR
THE SPIRITUAL LIFE.

CHAPTER I.
OF THE CONTEMPT OF WORLDLY
VANITIES,

1. *“ HE that followeth me shall not walk
“ in darkness, but shall have the Light of
“ Life.”* These are the words of CHRIST;
by which we are taught, that it is only by a
conformity to his Life and Spirit, that we
can be truly enlightened, and delivered from
all blindness of heart: let it, therefore, be
the principal employment of our minds, to
meditate on the Life of CHRIST.

2. The doctrine of CHRIST infinitely
transcends the doctrine of the holiest men;
and he that had the Spirit of CHRIST, would
find in it *“ hidden manna, the bread that came
“ down from heaven:”* but not having His
Spirit, many, tho’ they frequently hear His
doctrine, yet feel no pleasure in it, no ardent
desire

desire after it; for he only can cordially receive and truly delight in the doctrine of CHRIST, who continually endeavours to acquire the Spirit, and imitate the Life of CHRIST.

3. Of what benefit are thy most subtil disquisitions into the mystery of the Blessed Trinity, if thou art destitute of humility, and, therefore, a profaner of the Trinity? It is not profound speculations, but a holy life, that makes a man righteous and good, and dear to GOD: I had rather feel compunction, than be able to give the most accurate definition of it. If thy memory could retain the whole Bible, and the precepts of all the philosophers, what would it profit thee, without Charity and the Grace of GOD? "*Vanity of vanities! and all is vanity,*" except only the love of GOD, and an entire devotedness to His service!

4. It is the highest wisdom, by the contempt of the world, to press forward towards the Kingdom of Heaven: it is, therefore, vanity, to labour for perishing riches, and place our confidence in their possession; it is vanity, to hunt after honours, and raise ourselves to an exalted station; it is vanity, to fulfil the lusts of the flesh, and indulge desires that begin and end in torment; it is vanity, to wish that life may be long, and to have no concern whether it be good; it is
vanity,

vanity, to mind only the present world, and not to look forward to that which is to come, to suffer our affections to hover over a state in which all things pass away with the swiftness of thought, and not raise them to that where true joy abideth for ever.

5. Frequently recall to mind the observation of Solomon, that “*the eye is not satisfied with seeing, nor the ear filled with hearing;*” and let it be thy continual endeavour, to withdraw thy heart from the love of “*the things that are seen,*” and to turn it wholly to “*the things that are not seen:*” for he who lives in subjection to the sensual desires of animal nature, defiles his spirit, and loses the Grace of GOD.

CHAPTER II.

OF HUMILITY WITH RESPECT TO
INTELLECTUAL ATTAINMENTS.

I. EVERY man naturally desires to increase in knowledge; but what doth knowledge profit, without the Fear of the LORD? Better is the humble peasant, that serveth GOD; than the proud philosopher, who, destitute of the knowledge of himself, can
describe

describe the course of the planets. He that truly knows himself, becomes vile in his own eyes, and has no delight in the praise of man. If I knew all that the world contains, and had not Charity; what would it avail me in the sight of GOD, who will judge me according to my deeds?

2. Rest from an inordinate desire of knowledge, for it is subject to much perplexity and delusion. Learned men are fond of the notice of the world, and desire to be accounted wise: but there are many things, the knowledge of which has no tendency to promote the recovery of our first Divine life; and it is, surely, a proof of folly, to devote ourselves wholly to that, with which our supreme good has no connexion. The soul is not to be satisfied with the multitude of words; but a holy life is a continual feast, and a pure conscience the foundation of a firm and immoveable confidence in GOD.

3. The more thou knowest, and the better thou understandest, the more severe will be thy condemnation, unless thy life be proportionably more holy. Be not, therefore, exalted, for any uncommon skill in any art or science; but let the superior knowledge that is given thee, make thee more fearful, and more watchful over thyself. If thou supposest, that thou knowest many things, and hast perfect understanding of them,

them, consider, how many more things there are, which thou knowest not at all; and, instead of being exalted with a high opinion of thy great knowledge, be rather abased by an humble sense of thy much greater ignorance. And why dost thou prefer thyself to another, since thou mayst find many who are more learned than thou art, and better instructed in the will of GOD?

4. If thou wouldst learn and know that which is truly useful, love to be unknown, and to be held in no estimation: for the highest and most profitable learning is the knowledge and contempt of ourselves; and to have no opinion of our own merit, and always to think well and highly of others, is an evidence of great wisdom and perfection. Therefore, tho' thou seest another openly offend, or even commit some enormous sin, yet thou must not from thence take occasion to value thyself for thy superior goodness; for thou canst not tell how long thou wilt be able to persevere in the narrow path of virtue: all men are frail, but thou shouldst reckon none so frail as thyself.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE KNOWLEDGE OF THE TRUTH.

1. BLESSED is the man whom ETERNAL TRUTH teacheth, not by obscure figures and tranfient founds, but by a direct and full communication! The perceptions of our senses are narrow and dull, and our reasoning on those perceptions frequently misleads us. To what purpose are our keenest disputations on hidden and obscure subjects, for our ignorance of which we shall not be brought into judgment at the great day of universal retribution? How extravagant the folly, to neglect the study of the “*one thing needful*,” and wholly devote our time and faculties to that which is not only vainly curious, but sinful, and dangerous as the state of “*those that have eyes and see not*!”

2. And what have redeemed souls to do with the distinctions and subtilties of logic? He whom the ETERNAL WORD condescendeth to teach, is disengaged at once from the labyrinth of human opinions. For “*of ONE WORD are all things*,” and all things, without voice or language, speak Him alone: He is that Divine principle, which speaketh
in

in our hearts; and, without which, there can be neither just apprehension, nor rectitude of judgment. Now he to whom all things are but this ONE; who comprehendeth all things in His Will, and beholdeth all things in His Light; hath "*his heart fixed,*" and abideth in the peace of GOD.

3. O GOD, who art The TRUTH, make me one with Thee in everlasting love! I am often weary of reading, and weary of hearing: in Thee alone is the sum of my desires! Let all teachers be silent, let the whole creation be dumb before Thee, and do Thou only speak unto my soul!

4. The more a man is devoted to internal exercises, and advanced in singleness and simplicity of heart, the more sublime and diffusive will be his knowledge; which he does not acquire by the labour of study, but receives from Divine Illumination. A spirit pure, simple, and constant, is not, like Martha, distracted and troubled with the multiplicity of its employments, however great; because, being inwardly at rest, it seeketh not its own glory in what it does, but "*doth all to the glory of GOD:*" for there is no other cause of perplexity and disquiet, but an unsubdued will and unmortified affections. A holy and spiritual man, by reducing them to the rule and standard of his own mind, becomes the master of all his outward acts;

B

he

he does not suffer himself to be led by them to the indulgence of any inordinate affections that terminate in self, but subjects them to the unalterable judgment of an illuminated and sanctified spirit.

5. No conflict is so severe, as his who labours to subdue himself; but in this we must be continually engaged, if we would be more strengthened in the Inner Man, and make real progress towards perfection. Indeed, the highest perfection we can attain to in the present state, is allayed with much imperfection; and our best knowledge is obscured by the shades of ignorance; “*we see thro’ a glass darkly:*” an humble knowledge of thyself, therefore, is a more certain way of leading thee to GOD, than the most profound investigations of science. Science, however, or a proper knowledge of the things that belong to the present life, is so far from being blameable considered in itself, that it is good, and ordained of GOD; but purity of conscience, and holiness of life, must ever be preferred before it: and because men are more solicitous to learn much, than to live well, they fall into error, and receive little or no benefit from their studies. But if the same diligence was exerted to eradicate vice and implant virtue, as is applied to the discussion of unprofitable questions, and the “*vain strife of words;*” so much daring wickedness

ness would not be found among the common ranks of men, nor so much licentiousness disgrace those who are eminent for knowledge. Assuredly, in the approaching day of universal judgment, it will not be inquired what we have read, but what we have done; not how eloquently we have spoken, but how holily we have lived.

6. Tell me, where is now the splendour of those learned doctors and professors, whom, while the honours of literature were blooming round them, you so well knew and so highly revered? Their prebends and benefices are possessed by others, who scarcely have them in remembrance; the tongue of fame could speak of no name but theirs while they lived, and now it is utterly silent about them: so suddenly passeth away the glory of human attainments! Had these men been as solicitous to be holy, as they were to be learned, their studies might have been blest with that honour which cannot be sullied, and that happiness which cannot be interrupted. But many are wholly disappointed in their hopes both of honour and happiness, by seeking them in the pursuit of "*science falsely so called*;" and not in the knowledge of themselves, and the love and service of GOD: and chusing rather to be great in the eyes of men, than meek and lowly in the sight of GOD; they become vain in their imaginations, and their memorial is written in the dust.

7. He is truly good, who hath great charity; he is truly great, who is little in his own estimation, and rates at nothing the summit of worldly honour; he is truly wise, who “*counts all earthly things but as dross, that he*” “*may win CHRIST;*” and he is truly learned, who hath learnt to abandon his own will, and to do the will of GOD.

CHAPTER IV.

OF PRUDENCE WITH RESPECT TO OUR OPINIONS AND ACTIONS.

1. WE must not believe every word we hear, nor trust the suggestions of every spirit; but consider and examine all things with patient attention and in reference to GOD; for so great, alas! is human frailty, that we are more ready to believe and speak evil of one another, than good. But a holy man is not forward to give credit to the reports of others; because, being sensible of the darkness and malignity of nature, he knows that it is prone to evil, and too apt to pervert truth in the use of speech.

2. It is an evidence of true wisdom, not to be precipitate in our actions, nor pertinacious and inflexible in our opinions; and it is a part
of

CHAPTER IV.

11

of the same wisdom, not to give hasty credit to every word that is spoken, nor immediately to communicate to others what we have heard, or even what we believe. In cases of perplexity and doubt, consult a prudent and religious man; and chuse rather to be guided by the counsel of one better than thyself, than to follow the suggestions of thine own blind will.

3. A holy life, however, makes a man wise according to the Divine Wisdom, and wonderfully enlargeth his experience: and the more humble his spirit is, and the more subject and resigned to GOD, the more wise will he become in the conduct of outward life, and the more undisturbed in the possession of himself.

CHAPTER V.

OF READING THE SCRIPTURES, AND
OTHER HOLY BOOKS.

1. NOT eloquence, but Truth, is to be sought after in the Holy Scriptures, every part of which must be read with the same Spirit by which it was written. And as in these, and all other books, it is improvement

B 3

in

in holiness, not pleasure in the subtilty of the thought or the accuracy of the expression, that must be principally regarded; we ought to read those parts that are simple and devout, with the same affection and delight, as those of high speculation or profound erudition.

2. Whatever book thou readeſt, ſuffer not thy mind to be influenced by the character of the writer, whether his literary accompliſhments be great or ſmall; but let thy only motive to read, be the pure love of Truth; and, inſtead of inquiring who it is that writes, give all thine attention to the nature of what is written. Men paſs away like the ſhadows of the morning: but “*the Word of the LORD*” “*endureth for ever*,” and that Word, without reſpect of perſons, in ways infinitely various ſpeaketh unto all.

3. The profitable reading of the Holy Scriptures is frequently interrupted by the vain curioſity of our own minds, which prompts us to examine and diſcuſs, and labour to comprehend thoſe parts, that ſhould be meekly and ſubmiſſively paſſed over: but to derive ſpiritual improvement from reading, we muſt read with humility, ſimplicity, and faith; and not affect the reputation of profound learning.

4. Aſk with freedom, and receive with ſilence and reſpect, the inſtructions of holy men: and let not the parables and allegories of ancient times diſguſt thee; for they were not written without meaning, and without deſign.

C H A P.

CHAPTER VI.

OF INORDINATE AFFECTIONS.

1. THE moment a man gives way to inordinate desire, disquietude and torment take possession of his heart. The Proud and the Covetous are never at rest; but the Humble and Poor in Spirit possess their souls in the plenitude of peace.

2. He that is not perfectly dead to himself, is soon tempted and easily subdued, even in the most ordinary occurrences of life. The Weak in Spirit, who is yet carnal and inclined to the pleasures of sense, finds great difficulty in withdrawing himself from earthly desires; he feels regret and sorrow, as often as this abstraction is attempted; and every opposition to the indulgence of his ruling passion, kindleth his indignation and resentment. If he succeeds in the gratification of inordinate desire, he is immediately stung with remorse; for he has not only contracted the guilt of sin, but is wholly disappointed of the peace which he sought. It is, therefore, not by indulging, but by resisting our passions, that true peace of heart is to be found: it cannot be the portion of him that is carnal, nor of him that is devoted to a worldly life; it dwells only with the humble and spiritual man.

CHAPTER VII.

OF VAIN HOPE, AND ELATION OF MIND.

1. HE that placeth his confidence in man, or in any created being, is vain, and trusteth in a shadow. Be not ashamed to serve thy brethren in the meanest offices, and to appear poor in the sight of men, for the love of JESUS CHRIST. Presume not upon the success of thine own endeavours, but place all thy hope in GOD: do all that is in thy power with an upright intention, and GOD will bless with his favour the integrity of thy will. Trust not in thine own wisdom, nor in the wisdom and skill of any human being; but trust in the grace and favour of GOD, who raiseth the humble, and humbleth the self-presuming.

2. Glory not in riches, tho' they increase upon thee; nor in thy friends, because they are powerful: but glory in GOD, who giveth thee riches, and friends, and all things; and, what is more than all, desireth to give thee Himself. Be not vain of the gracefulness, strength, and beauty of thy body, which a little sickness can weaken and deform. Please not thyself with flattering reflexions on the acuteness of thy natural wit, and the sweetness

ness of thy natural disposition, lest thou displease GOD, who is the author of all the good that nature can dispense. Do not think thou art better than others, lest, in the sight of GOD, who only knoweth what is in man, thou be found worse. Be not proud of that in which thou art supposed to excel, however honoured and esteemed by men; for the judgment of GOD and the judgment of men are infinitely different, and that displeaseth Him which is commonly pleasing to them. Whatever good thou art truly conscious of, think more highly of the good of others, that thou mayest preserve the humility of thy spirit: to place thyself lower than all mankind, can do thee no hurt; but much hurt may be done, by preferring thyself to a single individual. Perpetual peace dwelleth with the Humble, but envy, indignation, and wrath distract the heart of the Proud.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF AVOIDING THE FAMILIAR INTERCOURSES OF THE WORLD.

I. "*OPEN not thine heart to every man;*" but entrust its secrets to him only that is wise, and feareth GOD. Be seldom in the company

pany of young men and strangers. Flatter not the rich; nor affect to be seen in the presence of the great. Associate only with the humble and simple, the holy and devout; and let thy conversation with them be on subjects that tend to the perfection of thy spirit. Be not familiar with any woman, but recommend all women to the protection and grace of GOD. Wish to be familiar only with GOD and His holy Angels, and shun the notice and intimacy of men: charity is due to all; but familiarity is the right of none.

2. It often happens, that a stranger, whom the voice of fame had made illustrious, loses all the brightness of his character, the moment he is seen and known: we hope to please others, by entering into familiar connexions with them; and we presently disgust them, by the evil qualities and irregular behaviour which they discover in us.

CHAPTER IX.

OF SUBJECTION AND OBEDIENCE.

1. IT is more beneficial to live in subjection, than in authority; and to obey, is much safer than to command. But many live in subjection, more from necessity than the love of
of

of GOD; and therefore, pass a life of continual labour, and find occasions of murmur in the most trifling events: nor can they possibly acquire liberty of spirit, 'till, with the whole heart, they are resigned, in all situations, to the will of GOD. Go where thou wilt, rest is not to be found, but in humble submission to the Divine Will: a fond imagination of being easier in any place than that which Providence has assigned us, and a desire of change grounded upon it, are both deceitful and tormenting.

2. Men love to act from their own judgment, and are always most inclined to those that are of the same opinion with themselves. But if GOD dwell in our hearts, we shall find it necessary frequently to abandon our own sentiments, for the sake of peace. And who is so perfectly wise, as to comprehend the causes and connexions of all things? Be not too confident, therefore, in thine own judgment, but willingly hearken to the judgment of others. And tho' in a question of speculative knowledge, or a case of worldly prudence, thine own opinion may be good; yet if, for the sake of GOD, thou canst quietly relinquish it, and submit to the opinion of another, it will greatly conduce to thy spiritual perfection. I have often heard, that it is more safe to take advice than to give it. In some instances, it may happen, that each
man's

man's opinion may be so equally good, as to produce suspension on both sides rather than submission on either; but to refuse submission to the opinion of another, when truth and the circumstances of the case require it, is a proof of a proud and pertinacious spirit.

CHAPTER X.

OF SUPERFLUOUS TALKING.

1. AS much as lies in thy power, shun the resorts of worldly men; for much conversation on secular business, however innocently managed, greatly retards the progress of the spiritual life. We are soon captivated by vain objects and employments, and soon defiled; and I have wished a thousand times, that I had either not been in company, or had been silent.

2. If it be asked, why we are so fond of mixing in the familiar and unprofitable conversations of the world, from which we so seldom return to silence and recollection without defilement and compunction; it must be answered, because in the present life we seek all our consolation, and, therefore, hope, by the amusements of company, to efface the impressions

impressions of sorrow, and repair the breaches of distraction; and because, of those things that we most love and desire, and of those that we most hate and would avoid, we are fond of thinking and speaking. But alas! how deceitful is this artificial management! for the hope of consolation from outward life, utterly destroys that inward and Divine consolation which the HOLY SPIRIT gives us, and which is the only support of the soul under all its troubles. Let us, therefore, watch and pray without ceasing, that no part of our invaluable time may be thus sacrificed to vanity and sin: and whenever it is proper and expedient to speak, let us speak those things that are holy, “*by which Christians edify one another.*”

3. An evil habit of negligence and inattention to our growth in Grace, is the principal cause of our keeping no guard upon our lips. Spiritual conferences, however, are highly serviceable to spiritual improvement, especially when persons of one heart and one mind associate together in the fear and love of GOD.

CHAPTER XI.

OF TRUE PEACE OF MIND, AND ZEAL
FOR SPIRITUAL IMPROVEMENT.

1. WE might enjoy much peace, if we did not busy our minds with what others do and say, in which we have no concern. But how is it possible for that man to dwell long in peace, who continually intermeddles in the affairs of another; who runs abroad seeking occasions of disquietude, and never or but seldom turns to GOD in the retirement of a recollected spirit? Blessed are the meek and single-hearted, for they shall possess the abundance of peace!

2. Whence was it that some of the saints became so perfect in the prayer of contemplation, but because it was their continual study and endeavour to mortify all earthly desires, and abstract themselves from all worldly concerns, that being free from perturbation they might adhere to GOD with all the powers of the soul? But we are too much engaged with our own passions, and too tenderly affected by the business and pleasures of this transitory life, to be capable of such high attainments: nay, so fixed are our spirits in slothfulness and cold

cold indifference, that we seldom overcome so much as one evil habit.

3. If we were perfectly dead to ourselves, and free from all inward entanglement, we might then have some relish for Divine enjoyments, and begin to experience the blessedness of heavenly contemplation. But the principal, if not the only impediment to such a state is, that we continue in subjection to violent passions and inordinate desires, without making the least effort to enter into the narrow way, which CHRIST has pointed out as the one way of perfection for all the saints of GOD. Thus, when any adversity, however trifling, comes upon us, we are soon dejected, and have immediate recourse to human consolations; but did we endeavour, like valiant soldiers, to stand our ground in the hour of battle, we should feel the succour of the LORD descending upon us from Heaven: for He is always ready to assist those that resolutely strive, and place their whole confidence in the power of His Grace; nay, He creates occasions of contest, to bless us with so many opportunities of victory.

4. If the progress to perfection is placed only in external observances, our religion, having no Divine life, will quickly perish with the things on which it subsists: but the axe must be laid to the root of the tree, that being separated and freed from the restless desires

desires of nature and self, we may possess our souls in the peace of GOD.

5. If every year we did but extirpate one vice, we should soon become perfect men: but we experience the sad reverse of this, and find that we were more contrite, more pure, more humble, and obedient, in the beginning of our conversion, than after many years profession of a religious life. It would be but reasonable to expect, that the fervour of our affections, and our progress in holiness, should have advanced higher and higher every day: but it is now thought to be a foundation of comfort, and even of boast, if a man, at the close of this mortal state, is able to retain some degree of his first ardour.

6. That the path of holiness may become easy and delightful, some violence must be used at first setting out, to remove its numerous obstructions. It is hard, indeed, to relinquish that to which we have been accustomed; and harder still, to resist and deny our own will. But how can we hope to succeed in the greatest conflict, if we will not contend for victory in the least? Resist, then, thine inordinate desires in their birth; and continually lessen the power of thine evil habits, lest, as they increase in strength in proportion as they are indulged, they grow at length too mighty to be subdued. O! if thou didst but consider, what peace thou wilt
bring

bring to thyself, and what joy thou wilt produce in Heaven, by a life conformed to the Life of CHRIST; I think thou wouldst be more watchful and zealous for thy continual advancement towards spiritual perfection.

CHAPTER XII.

OF THE BENEFIT OF ADVERSITY.

1. IT is good for a man to suffer the adversity of this earthly life; for it brings him back to the sacred retirement of the heart, where only he finds, that he is an exile from his native home, and ought not to place his trust in any worldly enjoyment. It is good for him also to meet with contradiction and reproach; and to be evil thought of, and evil spoken of, even when his intentions are upright, and his actions blameless; for this keeps him humble, and is a powerful antidote to the poison of vain-glory: and then chiefly it is, that we have recourse to the witness within us, which is GOD; when we are outwardly despised, and held in no degree of esteem and favour among men. Our dependence upon GOD ought to be so entire and absolute, that we should never think it necessary, in any kind of distress, to have recourse to human consolations.

C

2. When

2. When a regenerate man is sinking under adversity, or disturbed and tempted by evil thoughts, he then feels 'the necessity of the power and presence of GOD in his soul, without which he certainly knows that he can neither bear evil, nor do good; then he grieves, and prays, and "*groans to be delivered from the bondage of corruption;*" then weary of living in vanity, he wishes to "*die, that he may be dissolved, and be with* "*CHRIST;*" and then he is fully convinced, that absolute security and perfect rest are not compatible with his present state of life.

CHAPTER XIII.

OF RESISTING TEMPTATIONS.

1. AS long as we continue in this world, we cannot possibly be free from the trouble and anguish of temptation; and, in confirmation of this truth, it is written in Job, that "*the life of man upon earth is a continual warfare.*" Every one, therefore, ought to be attentive to the temptations that are peculiar to his own spirit; and to persevere in watchfulness and prayer, lest his "*adversary* "*the devil, who never sleepeth, but continually* "*goeth about seeking whom he may devour,*" should find some unguarded place, where he may enter with his delusions.

2. The

2. The highest degree of holiness attainable by man, is no security against the assaults of temptation, from which his present life is not capable of absolute exemption. But temptations, however dangerous and afflicting, are highly beneficial; because, under their discipline, we are humbled, purified, and led towards perfection. All the followers of CHRIST have thro' "*much tribulation and affliction entered into the kingdom of GOD;*" and those that could not endure the trial, have "*fallen from the faith and expectation of the saints, and become reprobate.*"

3. There is no order of men, however holy, nor any place, however secret and remote, where and among whom temptations will not come for the exercise of meekness, and troubles rise for the trial of patient resignation. And that this must be the condition of human nature in the present life, is evident, because it is "*born in sin,*" and contains in itself those restless and inordinate desires which are the ground of every temptation: so that when one temptation is removed, another succeeds; and we shall always have some degree of evil to suffer, till we have recovered the purity and perfection of that state from which we are fallen.

4. Many, by endeavouring to fly from temptations, have fallen precipitately into them; for it is not by flight, but by patience and humility, that we must become superior to

all our enemies. He who only declines the outward occasion, and strives not to pluck up the inward principle by the root, is so far from conquest, that the temptation will recur the sooner, and with greater violence, and he will feel the conflict still more severe. It is by gradual advances, rather than impetuous efforts, that victory is obtained; rather by patient suffering that looks up to GOD for support, than by impatient solicitude and rigorous austerity.

5. In thine own temptations, often ask counsel of those that have been tried and have overcome; and in the temptations of thy brother, treat him not with severity, but tenderly administer the comfort which you desire to receive.

6. That which renders the first assaults of temptation peculiarly severe and dangerous, is the instability of our own minds, arising from the want of faith in GOD; and as a ship without a steersman, is driven about by the force of contrary winds, so "*an unstable man,*" who has no faith in GOD, is tossed and borne away upon the wave of every temptation.

7. "*Gold is tried in the fire, and acceptable men in the furnace of adversity.*" We frequently know not the strength that is hidden in us, till temptation calls it forth, and shews us how much we are able to sustain. We must not, however, presume, but be particularly upon our guard against the first assaults; for

for the enemy will be more easily subdued, if he is resisted in his approaches, and not suffered to enter the portal of our hearts.

8. A certain Poet gives this advice:

Take Physick early; med'cines come too late,
When the disease is grown inveterate.

And the caution may be successfully applied to the assaults of sin, the progress of which is gradual and dangerous: for evil is at first presented to the mind by a single suggestion; the imagination kindled by the idea, seizes it with all its strength, and feeds upon it; this produces sensual delight, then the motions of inordinate desire, and at length the full consent of the Will. And thus, the malignant enemy, that was not resisted in his first attack, enters by gradual advances, and takes entire possession of the heart: and the longer opposition is deferred by habitual negligence, the power of opposing becomes every day less, and the strength of the adversary proportionably greater.

9. To some, temptations are more severe at the beginning of conversion; to others, at the end: some are afflicted with them during the whole course of a religious life; and some experience but short and gentle trials. This variety is adjusted by the Wisdom and Equity of Divine Providence, which hath weighed the different states and dispositions of different
C 3 men,

men, and ordered all its dispensations so as most effectually to tend to the salvation of all. Therefore, when we are tempted, let us not despair; but rather, with more animated fervours of faith, hope, and love, pray to GOD, that he would vouchsafe to support us under all our trials, and, in the language of St. Paul, “*with every temptation, to make also a way to escape,*” that we may be able to bear it; “*let us humble our souls*” as “*under the hand of GOD,*” who hath promised to “*save and exalt the lowly and the meek.*”

10. By these trials of affliction in the spirit of man, his proficiency in the Christian Life is fully proved; the power of Divine Grace is more sensibly felt in himself, and the fruits of it are more illustriously apparent to others. It is, indeed, a little matter, for a man to be holy and devout, when he feels not the pressure of any evil; but if, in the midst of troubles, he maintains his faith, his hope, and resignation, and “*in patience possesses his soul,*” he gives a considerable evidence of a regenerate nature. Some, however, who have been blest with victory in combating temptations of the most rigorous kind, are yet suffered to fall even by the lightest that arise in the occurrences of daily life; that being humbled by the want of power to resist such slight attacks, they may never presume upon their own strength to repel those that are more severe.

CHAPTER XIV.

OF AVOIDING RASH JUDGMENT.

1. KEEP thy eye turned inwardly upon thyself, and beware of judging the actions of others. In judging others, a man labours to no purpose, commonly errs, and easily sins; but in examining and judging himself, he is always wisely and usefully employed.

2. We generally judge of persons and things, as they either oppose or gratify our private views and inclinations; and, blinded by the impetuous motions of self-love, are easily led from the judgment of truth. If GOD alone was the pure object of all our intentions and desires, we should not be troubled when the truth of things happens to be repugnant to our own sentiments and opinions: but now, we are continually drawn aside from truth and peace, by some partial inclination lurking within, or some apparent good or evil rising without.

3. Many, indeed, secretly seek themselves in every thing they do, and perceive it not. These, while the course of things perfectly coincides with the sentiments and wishes of their own hearts, seem to possess all the blessings

sings of peace; but when their wishes are disappointed, and their sentiments opposed, they are immediately disturbed, and become sorrowful and wretched.

4. From the diversity of inclinations and opinions tenaciously adhered to, arise dissensions among friends and countrymen, nay even among the professors of a religious and holy life.

5. It is difficult to extirpate that which custom has deeply rooted; and no man is willing to be carried further, than his own inclination and opinions lead him. If, however, thou adherest more to thy own reason and thy own will, than to the Meek Obedience of JESUS CHRIST, as the principle of all virtue within thee; thou wilt but slowly, if ever, receive the illuminations of the HOLY SPIRIT: for GOD expects an entire and absolute subjection of our will to His; and that the flames of Divine Love should infinitely transcend the sublimest heights of human reason.

CHAPTER XV.

OF WORKS OF CHARITY.

1. LET not the hope of any worldly advantage, nor the affection thou bearest to any creature, prevail upon thee to do that which
is

is evil. For the benefit of him, however, who stands in need of relief, a customary good work may sometimes be intermitted, or rather commuted; for, in such a case, that good work is not annihilated, but incorporated with a better.

2. Without Charity, the external work profiteth nothing; but whatever is done from Charity, however trifling and contemptible in the opinion of men, is wholly fruitful in the acceptance of GOD, who regardeth more the degree of love with which we act, than what or how much we have performed. He doth much, who loveth much; he doth much, who doth well; and he doth much and well, who constantly preferreth the good of the community to the gratification of his own will.

3. Many actions, indeed, assume the appearance of Charity, that are wholly selfish and carnal; for inordinate affection, self-will, the hope of reward, and the desire of personal advantage and convenience, are the common motives that influence the conduct of men.

4. He that hath true and perfect Charity, "*seeketh not his own*" in any thing, but seeketh only that "*GOD may be glorified in all things:*" he "*envieth not,*" for he desires no private gratification: he delighteth not in himself, nor in any created being; but wisheth for that which is infinitely transcendent, to be blest in the enjoyment of GOD: he
ascribes

ascribes not good to any creature, but refers it absolutely to GOD; from Whom, as from its fountain, all good originally flows, in Whom, as in their centre, all saints will finally rest.

5. O that man had but one spark of true Charity! he would then know, by an experimental feeling, that himself, the world, and all creatures, were altogether vanity.

CHAPTER XVI.

OF BEARING THE INFIRMITIES OF OTHERS.

1. THOSE evils which a man cannot rectify either in himself or others, he ought to bear with humble resignation, till GOD shall be pleased to produce a change: for this state of imbecillity is, perhaps, continued, as the proper trial of patience, without the perfect work of which we shall make but a slow and ineffectual progress in the Christian Life. Yet under these impediments we must devoutly pray, that GOD would enable us, by the assistance of His Spirit, to bear them with constancy and meekness.

2. If “*after the first and second admonition thy brother will not obey the truth,*” contend no longer with him; but leave the event to
GOD,

GOD, who only knoweth how to turn evil into good, that His Will may be done, and His Glory accomplished in all his creatures.

3. Endeavour to be always patient of the faults and imperfections of others; for thou hast many faults and imperfections of thy own, that require a reciprocation of forbearance. If thou art not able to make thyself that which thou wishest to be, how canst thou expect to mould another in conformity to thy will? But we require perfection in the rest of mankind, and take no care to rectify the disorders of our own hearts: we desire that the faults of others should be severely punished, and refuse the gentlest correction ourselves: we are offended at their licentiousness, and yet cannot bear the least opposition to our own immoderate desires: we would subject all to the controul of rigorous statutes and penal laws, but will not suffer any restraint upon our own actions: and thus it appears, how very seldom the second of the two great commandments of CHRIST is fulfilled, and how difficult it is for a man to “*love his neighbour*” “*as he loves himself.*”

4. If all men were perfect, we should meet with nothing in the conduct of others to suffer for the sake of GOD. But in the present fallen state of human nature it is His Blessed Will, that we should learn to “*bear one another's burthens:*” and as no man is free from
some

some burthen of sin or sorrow; as none has strength and wisdom sufficient for all the purposes of life and duty; the necessity of mutual forbearance, mutual consolation, mutual support, instruction, and advice, is founded upon our mutual imperfections, troubles, and wants. Besides, by outward occasions of suffering from the conduct of others, the nature and degree of every man's inward strength is more plainly discovered; for outward occasions do not make him frail, but only shew him what he is in himself.

CHAPTER XVII.

OF A RECLUSE LIFE.

I. IT is necessary that thou shouldst learn to break and subdue thy own will in innumerable instances, if thou wouldst live in harmony and peace among those that are devoted to a life of religious retirement. “*How good and how pleasant it is, for brethren,*” in colleges and other societies separated from the world, “*to dwell together in unity,*” and to preserve “*the bond of peace*” unbroken to the end of life! Blessed, surely, is the man, who in this state hath passed his days with innocence, and closed them with success! That

That thou mayst keep thine integrity by a faithful perseverance in a course so glorious, consider thyself as an exile from thy native country, "*a stranger and a pilgrim upon earth,*" and be willing to become a fool for the sake of CHRIST.

2. It is not the peculiar habit, the tonsure, or any alteration merely external, but a change of heart, and an entire mortification of the passions, that are the indispensable qualifications for such a state; and he that seeks any thing in it, but the Glory of GOD in the purification of his own soul, will meet only with disappointment and trouble, anxiety and remorse: for the blessing of peace cannot long rest upon him, who doth not continually endeavour to make himself less than all men, and to become subject to all.

3. But, tell me, for what purpose camest thou hither; to serve or to govern, to be ministered unto or to minister? Thou knowest, that here thou art called to a life of subjection, labour, and patience; not of dominion, idleness, and amusement. Here men are tried, as gold in the fire; and here no one can stand, unless with his whole heart he desireth to be humbled in the highest degree for the sake of GOD.

CHAPTER XVIII.

OF THE EXAMPLES OF THE HOLY
FATHERS.

1. CONSIDER the lively examples of the primitive Christians, resplendent with the heavenly brightness of religious perfection; and you will soon discern, how worthless and vain is the sum of our best actions. Alas! what is our life, if it be compared with theirs? Those holy men, the faithful disciples of a Crucified Saviour, maintained their allegiance to their LORD, in hunger and thirst, in cold and nakedness, in labour and fatigue, in watching and prayer, in fasting and holy meditation, in the multitude of persecutions and reproaches. How numerous and severe were the trials of the Apostles, martyrs, confessors, virgins, and all who desired to “*follow CHRIST in the regeneration!*” They “*bated their life in this world, that they might keep it unto life eternal.*”

2. How severe a state of self-renunciation was chosen by the fathers in the desert! What long and heavy temptations did their perseverance overcome! what reiterated conflicts did they sustain with the enemy! How ardent were their
their

their prayers! how rigorous their tasks of abstinence! With what zeal and fervour did they aspire after higher degrees of spiritual perfection! with what intrepidity and resolution did they wage perpetual war against their vices! How pure and disinterested was their love of GOD! The day they devoted to labour, and the night to prayer; and even in the hours of labour, their hearts were lifted up to heaven in continual aspirations. Their whole time was usefully employed: every hour, in which they were engaged in immediate intercourse with GOD, seemed short; and ravished with the surpassing sweetness of Divine Contemplation, they became insensible of the want of bodily refreshment. Riches, authority, honours, friends, relations, and all propriety in the possession of sublunary good, they renounced: they received, with a reluctant hand, the common supports of animal life; and even deplored the necessity of administering to the wants of the body. With respect, therefore, to all earthly possessions, they were poor; but they were eminently rich in holiness, and the favour of GOD: outwardly they were in absolute want; but inwardly they abounded in Grace, and the refreshments of Divine consolation: they were the aliens and outcasts of the world, but the adopted sons and intimate friends of GOD: in their own estimation, they were less than nothing, and vanity; and
were,

were, indeed, mean and despicable in the eyes of men; but in the sight of GOD, they were "*elect and precious.*" By deep humility, pure obedience, ardent charity, and persevering patience, they made continual advances in the spiritual life, and obtained superadded degrees of the Grace of GOD. Such were the men, that were given for an example to all the professors of a religious life: and tho' their number is small, yet it ought more to encourage us to press resolutely forward towards perfection; than the multitude of the Lukewarm, to relax in our endeavours, and linger in our progress.

3. As an effect of the influence of their life, how great was the ardour of religious societies at their first institution! What devotion in prayer! what emulation in holiness! how strict and impartial the discipline of the superior, how unconstrained and chearful the reverence and obedience of the subject! These footsteps, tho' forsaken, still bear testimony to the upright progress of those holy men, who, by persevering in the narrow path in which CHRIST has called all to follow Him, trampled the world under their feet. Now, zeal is contracted within the narrow limits of negative perfection; and a mere passive sufferance of that discipline to which obedience has been vowed, a mere exemption from positive transgression, is esteemed a foundation of triumph.

umph. Ah! lamentable supineness! that we should so soon lose the primitive ardour; and grow weary of a Life of Holiness, thro' mere idleness and cold indifference.

4. GOD grant, that in thy heart, which has been impressed with so many examples of true devotion, the desire of perfection may never sleep the sleep of death!

CHAPTER XIX.

OF RELIGIOUS EXERCISES.

1. THE life of a religious man ought not only so to abound with holiness, as that the frame of his spirit may be at least equal to his outward behaviour; but there ought to be much more holiness within, than is discernible without; because GOD, who searcheth the heart, is our inspector and judge, whom it is our duty infinitely to reverence wherever we are, and as angels to walk pure in His Sight. We ought every day to renew our holy resolutions, and excite ourselves to more animated fervour, as if this was the first day of our conversion; and to say, “Assist me, O LORD
“GOD, in my resolution to devote myself
“to thy holy service; and grant, that this
“day I may begin to walk perfectly, because
“all that I have done hitherto is nothing.”

D

2. Accord-

2. According to the strength of our resolution, so is the degree of our progress; and much diligence and ardour is necessary for him who wisheth to advance well: for if he whose resolutions are strong, often fails; what will he do, whose resolutions are weak? We break our resolutions, indeed, from various causes, and in various ways; and a slight omission of religious exercises seldom happens without some injury to the spirit.

3. The good resolutions of the righteous depend not upon their own wisdom and ability, but upon the Grace of GOD, in which they perpetually confide, whatever be their attempts: for they know, that “*tho’ the heart of man deviseth his way,*” yet the LORD ordereth the event; and that “*it is not in man that walketh, to direct his steps.*”

4. If, for some act of piety, or some purpose of advantage to thy brother, a customary exercise is sometimes omitted, it may afterwards be easily resumed; but if it is lightly relinquished thro’ carelessness or weariness of spirit, the omission becomes culpable, and will be found hurtful. After the best exertion of our endeavours, we shall still be apt to fail in many duties: some determined resolution, however, must always be made, especially against those tempers and habits that are the chief impediments to our growth in Grace.

5. The

5. The concerns both of our outward state, and inward spirit, are to be equally examined and regulated; because both have a considerable influence in obstructing or advancing the spiritual life. If thou canst not continually recollect thyself, do it sometimes at least, and not less than twice every day, in the morning and in the evening. In the morning, resolve; and, in the evening, examine thy behaviour; what thou hast that day been in thought, word, and deed; for in all these, perhaps, thou hast often offended GOD and thy brother. Gird thy loins like a valiant man, and be continually watchful against the malicious stratagems of the devil. Bridle the appetite of gluttony, and thou wilt with less difficulty restrain all other inordinate desires of animal nature. Never suffer the invaluable moments of thy life to steal by unimproved, and leave thee in idleness and vacancy; but be always either reading, or writing, or praying, or meditating, or employed in some useful labour for the common good.

6. Bodily exercises are to be used with discretion; and the same exercises must not be indiscriminately undertaken by all. Those to which the duty of the society, as such, does not oblige us, must never be performed in the sight of others; for they are private and personal, and can be safely and usefully performed only in secret. Take care, however, that

from the love of private and personal exercises, thou dost not become averse to the public exercises of the community; but having fully and faithfully discharged those to which thou art bound by the injunctions of the superior, if any leisure remains, return to thyself again, and do whatever the spirit of devotion prompts thee to.

7. The same kind of exercise is not equally suited to the state and improvement of every spirit; but some are more useful and convenient to one than to another. Different exercises are also expedient for different times and seasons; and some are more salutary for the days of feasting, and some for the days of fasting: we stand in need of some in the seasons of temptation, and of others in the hours of internal peace and rest: some subjects of meditation are fitter for a time of sorrow, and others when we “*rejoice in the LORD.*”

8. On the eve of the principal feasts and fasts, we should renew our holy exercises, and with more exalted fervour implore the mediation of our great INTERCESSOR: and in the intervals between feast and feast, we should form such holy resolutions, as if we were about to leave this earthly life, to be made partakers of the everlasting feast. In all these seasons of peculiar devotion, we ought so to prepare our spirits, and so regulate our actions, as if we were shortly to be admitted into
“*the*

“ *the joy of our LORD.*” And if that blessed event is still deferred, let us humbly acknowledge that we are not yet sufficiently prepared for it, but are still unworthy of that “ *great glory which shall be revealed in us*” in GOD’s appointed time : and may a contrite sense of such an improper state, quicken us to more faithful vigilance, and a more holy preparation. “ *Blessed is the servant,*” saith CHRIST, “ *whom his lord, when he cometh, shall find watching.* Verily, I say unto you, that he *will make him ruler over all that he hath.*”

CHAPTER XX.

OF SOLITUDE AND SILENCE.

1. APPROPRIATE a convenient part of time to retirement and self-converse, and frequently meditate on the wonderful Love of GOD in the Redemption of man. Reject all studies that are merely curious ; and read only what will rather penetrate the heart with holy compunction, than exercise the brain with useless speculations.

2. If thou canst refrain from unnecessary conversation and idle visits, and suppress the desire of “ *bearing and telling some new thing ;*” thou wilt find not only abundant leisure, but

convenient opportunity for holy and useful meditation. The most eminent saints, where Providence has permitted it, have shunned all intercourse with men, and chosen to live wholly to GOD in retirement and solitude.

3. It is the declaration of Seneca, that “as often as he mingled in the company of men, he came out of it less a man than he went in :” and to the truth of this, our own experience, after much free conversation, bears testimony ; for it is much easier to be wholly silent, than not to exceed in word ; it is much easier to keep concealed at home, than to preserve ourselves from sin abroad : he, therefore, that presseth forward to the perfection of the internal and spiritual life, must, with JESUS, “*withdraw himself from the multitude.*”

4. No man can safely go abroad, that does not love to stay at home ; no man can safely speak, that does not willingly hold his tongue ; no man can safely govern, that would not cheerfully become subject ; no man can safely command, that has not truly learned to obey ; and no man can safely rejoice, but he that has the testimony of a good conscience.

5. The joy and safety of the saints has always been full of the Fear of GOD ; nor were they less humble, and less watchful over themselves, because of the splendour of their holiness, and their extraordinary measures of Grace : but the security of the wicked begins
in

in pride and presumption, and ends in self-delusion. Whatever, therefore, are thy attainments in holiness, do not promise thyself a state of unchangeable perfection in the present life. Those whose character for virtue has stood high in the esteem of men, have been proportionably more exposed to the danger of a severer fall, thro' self-confidence: and, therefore, it is much safer for most men not to be wholly free from temptation, but rather to be often assaulted, lest they grow too secure; lest, perhaps, they exalt themselves in the pride of human attainments; nay, lest they become wholly devoted to the honours, the pleasures, and comforts of their earthly life.

6. O that man would never seek after transitory joy, would never busy himself with the trifling affairs of a perishing world; how pure a conscience might he maintain! O that he could divorce his spirit from all vain solicitude; and devoting it to the contemplation of GOD and the truths of Salvation, place all his confidence in the Divine mercy; in what profound tranquillity and peace would he possess his soul!

7. No man is worthy of Heavenly consolation, unless he hath been diligently exercised in holy compunction. If thou desirest true compunction, enter into thy closet, and excluding the tumults of the world, according to the advice of the Psalmist, “*commune with*

“ *thy heart, and be still,*” that thou mayst feel regret and horror for sin. Thou wilt find in the closet, that which thou often lovest abroad. The closet long continued in, becomes delightful; but, when seldom visited, it is beheld with reluctance, weariness, and disgust. If, in the beginning of thy conversion, thou canst keep close to it, and cultivate the advantages it is capable of yielding, it will be ever after desirable as a beloved friend, and become the seat of true consolation.

8. In solitude and silence the holy soul advances with speedy steps, and learns the hidden truths of the Oracles of GOD. There she finds the fountain of tears, in which she bathes and purifies herself every night: there she riseth to a more intimate union with her Creator, in proportion as she leaves the darkness, impurity, and tumult of the world. To him, who withdraws himself from his friends and acquaintance to seek after GOD, will GOD draw near with his holy Angels.

9. It is better for a man to lie hid continually, and attend to the purification of his soul; than, neglecting that “ *one thing needful,*” to go abroad and work miracles. It is highly commendable in all that are devoted to a religious life, to go seldom abroad, to decline being seen of men, and to be as little fond of seeing them. And, indeed, why shouldst thou desire to see that, which thou
hast

hast neither power nor permission to enjoy? for “*the world passeth away, and the lust thereof.*” Our sensual appetites continually prompt us to range abroad, in search of continual gratification; but when the hour of wandering is over, what do we bring home, but remorse of conscience, and weariness and dissipation of spirit? A joyful going out is often succeeded by a sad return; and a merry evening brings forth a sorrowful morning. Thus all carnal joy enters delightfully, but, e’er it departs, bites and kills.

10. What canst thou see any where else, which thou canst not see in thy chosen retirement? Behold the heavens, the earth, and all the elements! for out of these were all things made. What canst thou see there or any where, that will “*continue long under the sun?*” Thou hopest, perhaps, to subdue desire by the power of enjoyment: but thou wilt find it impossible for “*the eye to be satisfied with seeing, or the ear to be filled with hearing.*” If all visible nature could pass in review before thee, what would it be but a vain vision?

11. Lift up thy eyes, then, to GOD in the highest heavens, and pray for the forgiveness of thy innumerable sins and negligences. Leave vain pleasures to the enjoyment of vain men, and mind only that which GOD hath required of thee for thy own eternal good. Make thy door fast behind thee; and invite
JESUS,

JESUS, thy beloved, to come unto thee, and enlighten thy darkness with His Light. Abide faithfully with Him in this retirement, for thou canst not find so much peace in any other place.

12. If thou hadst never gone abroad, and listened to idle reports, thou hadst continued safe in the possession of peace. But from whatever time thou delightest to hear and to tell news, thy heart will be the prey of disappointment and trouble, anxiety and perturbation.

CHAPTER XXI.

OF COMPUNCTION OF HEART.

1. IF thou wouldst make any progress in the Christian Life, keep thyself continually in the Fear of GOD; and love not licentious freedom, but restrain all thy senses within strict discipline, and guard thy spirit against intemperate mirth. Give up thy heart to compunction, and thou wilt soon feel enkindled in it the fire of devotion. Compunction opens a path to Infinite Good, which is instantly lost by dissipation and light merriment. It is wonderful, indeed, that any man should rejoice in this life, who considers his state of banish-

banishment, and the multitude of dangers to which he is continually exposed: but thro' levity of heart, and the neglect of self-examination, we grow insensible of the disorders of our souls; and often vainly laugh, when with just reason we ought to mourn. There is, however, no true liberty, nor any solid joy, but in the Fear of GOD united with a pure conscience.

2. Blessed is the man, who can throw off every impediment of trouble and dissipation, and recollect his spirit into union with holy compunction! Blessed is he, that can renounce every enjoyment that may either defile or burthen his conscience! Strive manfully; one custom is subdued and extirpated by another. If thou canst divorce thyself from men and their concerns, they will soon divorce themselves from thee, and leave thee to do the work of thy own salvation in peace.

3. Perplex not thy spirit, therefore, with the business of others, nor involve thyself in the interests of the great. Keep thy eye continually upon thyself, as its chief object; and admonish thyself, in an especial manner, above all that are dear to thee. Grieve not, that thou dost not enjoy the favour of men; but rather grieve that thou hast not walked with that holy vigilance and self-denial which become a true Christian, who is the devoted servant of GOD.

4. It

4. It is more safe, and more beneficial, not to have many consolations in the present life, especially those that are carnal. That we are destitute, however, of spiritual and divine consolation, or but seldom enjoy its sweetness, is owing to ourselves; because we desire not compunction of heart, nor abandon those consolations that are external and vain. Acknowledge thyself not only unworthy of Divine consolation, but worthy rather of much tribulation.

5. When a man feels true compunction, the pleasures and honours of the world become burthenfome and bitter, and he finds continual occasion for grief and tears; for whether he considers himself, or thinks of others, he knows, that no man lives without much tribulation. And the more he considers himself, the greater will be his sorrow: for the ground of true compunction and sorrow, is the multitude of our transgressions, and the strong possession that sin has in us; by which our faculties are so subdued, that we are scarcely ever able to contemplate the enjoyments of the heavenly state.

6. If thou didst more frequently think of the time of death, than of the length of life, thou wouldst undoubtedly exert more ardent resolution in resisting the power of sin; and didst thou truly consider the awful purifications that will be necessary to restore a neglected

lected and ill-governed spirit, I think thou wouldst gladly submit to a life of labour and penance, and not be afraid of the most rigorous austerities; but because we suffer not these considerations to impress our hearts, but turn them off by yielding to the blandishments of sense, we remain, both to the evil of our fallen state, and the means of redemption from it, cold and insensible.

7. It is owing to that imbecillity which dreads compunction, that the wretched body complains upon such trifling occasions. Pray, therefore, most humbly and most ardently to the LORD, that He would bless thee with the spirit of compunction; and say, with the Royal Prophet, “*Feed me, O LORD, with the bread of tears, and give me plenteousness of tears to drink!*”

CHAPTER XXII.

OF THE CONSIDERATION OF
HUMAN MISERY.

1. WRETCHED thou art, wherever thou art, and to whatever thou turnest, unless thou turnest to GOD. Why art thou troubled, because the events of life have not corresponded with thy own will and desire? Who
is

is there, that enjoyeth all things according to his own will ; neither I, nor thou, nor any man upon earth. There is no human being without some share of distress and anguish, not even kings and popes. Whose condition, therefore, is the best ? his, surely, who is ready to suffer any affliction for the sake of GOD.

2. Many weak and ignorant persons say, “ Behold, how happy a state does that man enjoy ! how rich, how great, how powerful and exalted ! ” But turn thy attention to the unfading glories and unperishing riches of Eternity, and thou wilt perceive that all these temporal advantages are of no value : their acquisition and continuance are uncertain, and their enjoyment painful ; for they are never possessed without solicitude and fear. The happiness of man, whose real wants are soon and easily supplied, “ *consisteth not in the abundance of the things which he possesseth.* ”

3. It is, indeed, misery to live upon earth : and the more spiritual a man desires to be, the more bitter does he find the present life ; because he more sensibly feels in himself, and more clearly discerns in others, the depths of human corruption. To eat and drink, to wake and sleep, to labour and to rest, and to be subject to all other necessities of fallen nature, must needs be a life of affliction and misery to the regenerate man, who longs “ *to be dissolved,* ” and to be free from sin, and the occasions of sin.

4. Under

4. Under a sense of the oppression and trouble which the internal man feels from bodily wants and pains, the Royal Prophet, so far as it was possible to be freed from them, devoutly prays, “*From my necessities deliver me,*” “*O LORD!*” Miserable, however, are all who have not this sense of the corruption and misery of their present life; and much more miserable those that are in love with it: for there are some whose attachment to it is so exceedingly strong, that tho’ by their own labour and the bounty of others they are scarcely supplied with common necessities, yet if it was possible for them to live here for ages, they would not spend a single thought on the Kingdom of GOD. O infatuated and faithless hearts, that are so deeply sunk in earth, as to feel no desire for any enjoyments but those that are carnal! But, wretched creatures! they will in the end bitterly experience, how vain and worthless that is on which they have “*set their affections.*” The saints of GOD, and all the devoted friends and followers of CHRIST, regarded not the things that gratified the appetites of the flesh, nor those that were the objects of popular esteem and pursuit; but their hope and desire panted after the purity and glory of the Angelick kingdom: their whole soul was continually elevated to the eternal and invisible enjoyments of Heaven, that by the continual
influence

influence of what was visible and temporal, it might not be enslaved to the enjoyments of earth.

5. Dear brother! cast not away the hope of attaining to these spiritual enjoyments; time and opportunity for this are in much mercy still allowed thee: why, then, wilt thou defer thy good purpose from day to day? Arise, this moment, from the deadly sleep of sin, and say, Now is the time of action, now is the day of battle, now the season of amendment, “*the accepted time, the day of salvation.*”

6. The hour of distress, is the hour of victory. Thou must pass thro’ fire and water, before thou canst come to refreshment and rest. Unless thou dost violence to thyself, thou wilt never subdue sin. While we carry about us this corruptible body, we cannot be free from the assaults of sin, nor live without weariness and sorrow. We desire, indeed, to be at rest from all misery; but as, by sin, we lost our innocence, so, with our innocence, we lost our true happiness. It is, therefore, necessary, to hold fast our patience, and wait the appointed time of GOD’s Mercy, ’till this iniquity, and the calamities of which it is the cause, “*shall be overpast, and mortality be swallowed up of life.*”

7. How great is human frailty, for ever prone to evil! To-day we confess our sins, and to-morrow commit the same sins again:
this

this hour we resolve to be vigilant, and the next act as if we had never resolved at all. What reason, therefore, have such corrupt and unstable creatures to be continually humble, and to reject every vain opinion of their own strength and goodness!

8. That may be soon lost thro' negligence, which after much labour we have at length scarcely attained thro' Grace: and what will become of us in the eve of life, if we grow cool and languid in the morning? Woe be to us, if we thus turn aside to repose and ease, as if all were peace and security; when as yet there does not appear a single footstep of true holiness in all our conduct!

9. We have still need, like young novitiates, of being again instructed, and, by severe discipline, formed a second time to holiness; if peradventure any hope be left of future amendment, and a more sure advancement towards the perfection of the spiritual life.

CHAPTER XXIII.

OF THE MEDITATION OF DEATH.

1. THE end of thy present life will speedily come: consider, therefore, in what degree of preparation thou standest for that which will succeed. To-day man is, to-morrow he

E

is

is not seen; and when he is once removed from the sight of others, he soon passeth from their remembrance. O the hardness and insensibility of the human heart, that thinks only on present enjoyments, and wholly disregards the prospects of futurity! In every thought, and every action, thou shouldst govern and possess thy spirit so absolutely, as if thou wast to die to-day; and was thy conscience pure, thou wouldst not fear thy dissolution, however near. It is better to avoid sin, than to shun death. If thou art not prepared for that awful event to-day, how wilt thou be prepared to-morrow? To-morrow is an uncertain day; and how knowest thou, that to-morrow will be thine?

2. What availeth it to live long, when the improvement of life is so inconsiderable? Length of days, instead of making us better, often increaseth the weight of sin. Would to GOD that we could live well, only for one day! Many reckon years from the time of their conversion; but the account of their attainments in holiness, is exceedingly small. Therefore, tho' death be terrible, yet a longer life may be dangerous. Blessed is the man, who continually anticipates the hour of his death, and keeps himself in continual preparation for its approach!

3. If thou hast ever seen another die, let not the impression of that most interesting sight be effaced from thy heart; but remember,

ber, that thro' the same vale of darkness thou also must pass from this state of existence to the next. When it is morning, think that thou mayst not live 'till the evening; and in the evening, presume not to promise thyself another morning. Be, therefore, always ready; and so live, that death may not find thee confounded at its summons. Many die suddenly and unexpectedly; "*for in such an hour as ye think not, the son of man cometh.*" And when that last hour is come to thee, thou wilt begin to think differently of thy past life, and be inexpressibly grieved for thy remissness and inconsideration.

4. How wise and happy is the man, who continually endeavours to be as holy in the day of life, as he wishes to be found in the hour of death! And a perfect contempt of the world, an ardent desire of improvement in holiness, the love of discipline, the labour of penitence, cheerful obedience, self-denial, and the patient enduring of any affliction for the sake of CHRIST, will contribute to raise a pleasing confidence of dying well.

5. While thy mind is invigorated by the health of thy body, thou wilt be able to do much towards thy purification; but when it is oppressed and debilitated by sickness, I know not what thou canst do. Few spirits are made better by the pain and languor of sickness; as few great pilgrims become eminent saints.

6. Let not the example of thy friends and relations, nor any confidence in the superiority of their wisdom, influence thee to defer the care of thy salvation to a future time; for all men, even thy friends and relations, will forget thee much sooner than thou supposest. It is better to “*provide oil for thy lamp*” now, before it is wanted, than to depend upon receiving it from others “*when the bridegroom cometh:*” for if thou art not careful of thyself now, who can be careful of thee hereafter, when time and opportunity are for ever lost? This instant, NOW, is exceedingly precious: now is “*the accepted time, now is the day of salvation.*” How deplorable, therefore, is it, not to improve this invaluable moment, in which we may lay hold on eternal life! A time will come, when thou shalt wish for one day, nay one hour, to repent in; and who can tell, whether thou wilt be able to obtain it?

7. Awake then, dearest brother, and behold from what inconceivable danger thou mayst now deliver thyself; from what horrible fear thou mayst now be rescued, only by “*passing the time of thy sojourning in holy fear,*” and in continual expectation of thy removal by death. Endeavour now to live in such a manner, that, in that awful moment, thou mayst rejoice rather than fear. Learn now to die to the world, that thou mayst then begin
to

to live with CHRIST: learn now to despise all created things, that being delivered from every incumbrance, thou mayst then freely rise to Him. Now subdue thy earthly and corruptible body by penitence and self-denial, that then thou mayst enjoy the glorious hope of exchanging it for a spiritual and immortal body, in the resurrection of the just.

8. Ah foolish man! why dost thou still flatter thyself with the expectation of a long life, when thou canst not be secure of a single day? How many unhappy souls, deluded by this hope, are in some unexpected moment separated from the body! How often dost thou hear, that one is slain, another is drowned, another by falling from a precipice has broken his neck, another is choaked in eating, another has dropt down dead in the exercise of some favourite diversion; and that thousands, indeed, are daily perishing, by fire, by sword, by the plague, or by the violence of robbers! Thus is death common to every age; and man suddenly passeth away as a vision of the night.

9. Who will remember thee after death, who will then pray for thee, and whose prayer can then avail thee? Now, therefore, dearest brother, now turn to GOD, and do whatever His HOLY SPIRIT enables thee to perform: for thou knowest not the hour in which death will seize thee, nor canst thou conceive the consequences of his seizing thee unprepared. Now, while the time of gathering riches is

in much mercy continued, lay up for thyself the substantial and unperishing treasures of Heaven. Think of nothing, but the business of thy redemption; be careful for nothing, but the improvement of thy state in GOD. Now “*make to thyself friends*” of the regenerate and glorified sons of GOD, that when thy present life “*shall fail, they may receive thee into everlasting habitations.*”

10. Live in the world as a stranger and pilgrim, who hath no concern with its business or pleasures; and knowing that thou hast “*here no continuing city,*” keep thy heart disengaged from earthly passions and pursuits, and lifted up to Heaven in the patient “*hope of a city that is to come, whose builder and maker is GOD.*” Thither let thy daily prayers, and sighs, and tears, be directed; that after death thy spirit may be wafted to the LORD, and united to Him for ever. *Amen.*

CHAPTER XXIV.

OF THE LAST JUDGMENT, AND THE PUNISHMENT OF SINNERS.

1. IN all thy thoughts and desires, thy actions and pursuits, “*have respect to the end;*” and consider, how thou wilt appear before that awful Judge, from whom nothing is hidden, who

who is not to be perverted by bribes, nor softened by excuses, but invariably judgeth righteous judgment. O most wretched and foolish sinner, thou who tremblest before the face of an angry man that is ignorant in all things! what wilt thou be able to answer unto GOD, who knoweth all thy sins, and searcheth the lowest depths of the evil that is in thee? Why lookest thou not forward, and preparest thyself for the day of His Righteous Judgment, in which one man cannot possibly be excused or defended by another, but every one will have as much as he can answer, in answering for himself? Now, thy labours may be profitable, thy tears acceptable, thy sighs and groanings heard, thy contrition salutary and of power to wash away thy sins.

2. The patient man hath in this world a true and salubrious purgatory; who, when he is injured, is more grieved for the sin of the offender, than for the wrong that is done to himself; who can ardently pray for his enemies, and from his heart forgive their offences; who feels no reluctance to ask forgiveness of others; who is sooner moved to compassion, than provoked to anger; who constantly denies his own will, and endeavours to bring the body into absolute and total subjection to the spirit. And it is, surely, better, to purge away sin by continual repentance, and to break off evil habits by conti-

nual resistance, in the present life, than to leave them to the awful purifications of another state. But thro' an inordinate love for the indulgences of corrupt flesh and blood, we deceive ourselves into total ignorance and negligence with respect to all the interests of our immortal spirits.

3. As thy soul is unperishable, what can the fire of purgatory devour but thy sins? The more, therefore, thou now indulgest thyself, and gratifiest the desires of the flesh, the more severe must be thy purification, and the more fuel dost thou heap up as food for that fire. The pains of that tremendous state will arise from the nature and degree of every man's sin. There the spiritual sluggard shall be incessantly urged with burning stings, and the glutton tortured with inconceivable hunger and thirst: there the luxurious and voluptuous shall be overwhelmed with waves of flaming pitch and offensive sulphur; and the envious, with the pain of disappointed malignity, shall howl like mad dogs: the proud shall be filled with shame; and the covetous straitened in inexpressible want. One hour of torment there will be more insupportable, than a hundred years of the severest penance in this life. There no respite of pain, no consolation of sorrow, can be found; while here some intermission of labour, some comfort from holy friends, is not incompatible with the most rigorous discipline.

4. Be

4. Be now, therefore, solicitous for thy redemption, and afflicted for the sins that oppose it, that in the day of judgment thou mayst stand securely among the blessed; for “*then*” “*shall the righteous man stand in great boldness*” “*before the face of such as have afflicted and*” “*oppressed him.*” Then shall he rise up in judgment, who now meekly submits to the judgment of others: then the humble and poor in spirit shall have great confidence, and the proud shall be encompassed with fear on every side: then it will be evident to all, that he was wise in this world, who had learned to be despised as a fool for the love of CHRIST: then the remembrance of tribulation patiently endured shall become sweet, and “*all iniquity shall stop her mouth:*” then every devout man shall rejoice, and every impious man shall mourn: then shall the mortified and subdued flesh triumph over that which was pampered in ease and indulgence; the coarse garment shall shine, and the soft raiment lose all its lustre; and the homely cottage shall be more extolled than the gilded palace: then constant patience shall give that stability, which the power of the world could not confer: then simple obedience shall be more highly prized than refined subtilty, and a pure conscience more than learned philosophy: then the contempt of riches shall be of more value than all the treasures of
worldly

worldly men: then shalt thou have greater comfort from having prayed devoutly every day, than from having fared deliciously; and shalt more rejoice, that thou' hast kept silence long, than that thou hadst talked much: then works of holiness shall avail thee more than the multitude of fine words: then a life of self-denial and severe penance shall give thee more satisfaction, than all earthly delights could bestow.

5. Learn, therefore, now to suffer under afflictions comparatively light, that thou mayst then be delivered from sufferings so grievous. Here thou mayst first make trial, how much there thou wilt be able to sustain: for if thou art able to bear but little now, how wilt thou then bear such amazing and lasting torments? if only a slight suffering make thee so impatient now, what will the rage of hell do then? Behold and consider! thou canst not have a double Paradise; thou canst not enjoy a life of delight and pleasure upon earth, and afterwards reign with CHRIST in Heaven.

6. If to this very day thou hadst lived in honour and pleasure, what would it avail, if thou art to die the next moment? All, therefore, is vanity, but the love of GOD, and a life devoted to his will. He that loveth GOD with all his heart, fears neither death, nor punishment, nor judgment, nor hell; because "*perfect love casteth out fear,*" and openeth
a sure

a sure and immediate access to the Divine Presence. But it is no wonder, that he, who still loves and delights in sin, should fear both death and judgment. Yet, however, it might be well, if thou art not to be withheld from sin by the love of GOD, that thou shouldst at least be restrained from it by Fear; for he that casts behind him the Fear of an offended GOD, cannot possibly persevere in any thing that is good, but must run precipitately into every snare of the devil.

CHAPTER XXV.

OF ZEAL IN THE TOTAL REFORMATION OF LIFE.

1. BE watchful and diligent in the service of GOD; and frequently recollect, that thou hast left the broad way of the world, and entered into the narrow path of holiness, that thou mightest live to GOD, and become a spiritual man. With increasing ardour, therefore, “*press*” continually “*towards the mark*,” and ere long thou wilt receive “*the prize of the high calling of GOD in CHRIST JESUS*,” when there shall be “*no more fear nor sorrow, for GOD will wipe all tears from our eyes*,” and take away all trouble from our hearts,

hearts. Thus will a short life of inconsiderable labour be exchanged for an everlasting life, not only of perfect rest, but of increasing joy. If thou continuest faithful and diligent in labouring, GOD doubtless will be faithful and rich in recompensing. Thou mayst, therefore, maintain a comfortable hope, that in the end thou shalt inherit the Crown of Victory; only beware of security, lest it betray thee into sloth or presumption.

2. A certain person deeply perplexed about the state of his soul, and continually fluctuating between hope and fear, came one day to a church, overwhelmed with grief; and prostrating himself before the altar, repeatedly uttered this wish in his heart: “O that I
“ certainly knew, I should be able to perse-
“ vere!” Immediately the Divine voice speaking within him, answered thus: “And
“ what wouldst thou do, if this certain know-
“ ledge was bestowed upon thee? Do now,
“ that which thou wouldst then do, and rest
“ secure of thy perseverance.” Comforted and established by this answer, he resigned himself to the Divine disposal, and his perplexity and distress were soon removed. Instead of indulging anxious inquiries into the future condition of his soul, he applied himself wholly to know what was “*the good and acceptable will of*
“ *GOD,*” as the only principle and perfection of every good work. “*Trust in the*
“ *LORD, and do good,*” saith the Royal prophet;

phet; “*so shalt thou dwell in the land, and be fed with the riches of His Grace.*”

3. The principal obstacle to the reformation and improvement of life, is the dread of the difficulty and labour of the contest. And it is true, that they only make the most eminent advances in holiness, who resolutely endeavour to conquer in those things, that are most disagreeable and most opposite to their appetites and desires; and then chiefly does a man most advance, and obtain higher degrees of the Grace of GOD, when he most overcomes himself, and most mortifies his own spirit.

4. But tho’ all men have not the same degree of evil to overcome; yet a diligent Christian, zealous of good works, who has more and stronger passions to subdue, will be able to make a greater progress, than he that is inwardly calm, and outwardly regular, but less fervent in the pursuit of holiness.

5. Two things are highly useful to perfect amendment; to withdraw from those sinful gratifications to which nature is most inclined, and to labour after that virtue in which we are most deficient. Be particularly careful also to avoid chiefly those tempers and actions, that chiefly and most frequently displease thee in others. Wherever thou art, turn every thing to an occasion of improvement: if thou beholdest or hearest of good examples, let them kindle in thee an ardent desire of imitation; if thou seest any thing blameable, beware

beware of doing it thyself; or if thou hast done it, endeavour to amend it the sooner. As thy eye observeth and thy judgment censureth others, so art thou observed and censured by them.

6. If it is good and pleasant to behold brethren in the same religious society, full of fervour and devotion in spirit, modest, courteous, and submissive, in their outward deportment; it must be proportionably grievous and offensive, to find among them a dissolute and inordinate life, totally repugnant to the obligations of that holy state which all have freely chosen. How dangerous and hurtful is it, to forget the nature and design of so great a salvation, and turn all the thoughts and desires of the heart to that which is not only foreign to it, but its greatest enemy, a sensual and worldly life!

7. Be mindful, therefore, of that holy vocation with which thou hast been called, and keep continually impressed upon thy mind the image of the Crucified JESUS. Thou wilt find abundant reason to be ashamed and confounded, when, after considering the Life of CHRIST, thou reviewest thy own, which, tho' thou hast long professed the imitation of that Blessed Exemplar, thou hast yet taken so little care to make conformable to it. He that intently and devoutly exercises himself in the most holy Life and Passion of his LORD, will find all that is useful and necessary to his redemp-

redemption in such great abundance, that he need not seek after any thing out of or better than JESUS. O, if JESUS Crucified would come into our hearts, how soon and how sufficiently should we be taught!

8. The zealous and watchful Christian bears patiently, and performs chearfully, whatever is commanded him: but he that is cold and negligent suffers tribulation upon tribulation, and of all men is most miserable; for he is destitute of inward and spiritual comfort, and to that which is outward and carnal he is forbidden to have recourse. He that obstinately throws off the restraints of "CHRIST'S *easy yoke*," is not only in danger of irrecoverable ruin, but will find himself deceived in the expectation of a life of relaxation and liberty; for restraint, oppression, and disgust, will perpetually arise, wherever he turns the imaginations and desires of his heart.

9. But do thou consider the example of those, who have voluntarily submitted to the severest discipline; who live in a state of total abstraction from the pleasures and cares of animal life; who go abroad seldom, eat sparingly, cloath coarsely, labour much, talk little, watch late, rise early, pray long, read often, and always keep their spirits under the restraint of some holy exercise. Consider also the spiritual and Divine life of the Apostles and first followers of CHRIST, as the object of thy imitation; and doubt not but the mercy of
GOD

GOD to all that turn the desire of their heart to Him, will enable thee to follow it. In this path, thou mayst go forward with increasing hope and strength; and, in this path, thou wilt approach Heaven with such speedy steps, as soon to despise and forget all human strength, consolation, and dependence.

10. Would to GOD, that we had no other employment, but with heart and voice to glorify His Holy Name! that we never stood in need of meat, drink, or sleep, but could always praise GOD, and attend to the illuminating and purifying influences of His HOLY SPIRIT! The blessedness of the Divine Life would not then be interrupted, as it is now, by the numerous infirmities and necessities of the body. O that these necessities were wholly removed; and we had nothing to hunger after, but those spiritual refreshments which we now so seldom taste!

11. When a man is so far advanced in the Christian Life, as not to seek consolation from any created thing, then doth he first begin perfectly to enjoy GOD; then, "*in whatever state he is, he will therewith be content;*" then neither doth prosperity exalt, nor adversity depress him; but his heart is wholly fixed and established in GOD, Who is his All in All; with respect to Whom, nothing perisheth, nothing dieth; but all things live to His Glory, and are continually subservient to His Blessed Will.

12. Be

12. Be always mindful of the great end of temporary nature; and remember, that time once lost will never return. Without perpetual watchfulness and diligence, holiness can never be attained; for the moment thou beginnest to relax in these, thou wilt feel inward imbecility, disorder, and disquietude. But if thou press forward with unabated fervour, thou shalt find strength and peace; and thro' the Mercy of GOD, and that love of holiness which His Grace hath inspired, wilt perceive "*thy yoke*" become daily "*more easy,*" "*and thy burthen more light.*" Reflect, that it is only the fervent and diligent soul that is prepared for all duty and for all events; that it is greater toil to resist evil habits and violent passions, than to sweat at the hardest bodily labour; that he who is not careful to resist and subdue small sins, will insensibly fall into greater; and that thou shalt always have joy in the evening, if thou hast spent the day well. Watch over thyself, therefore; excite and admonish thyself; and whatever is done by others, do not neglect thyself. Thou wilt make greater advances in imitating the Life of CHRIST, in proportion to the greater violence with which thou deniest thyself. *Amen.*

THE END OF THE FIRST BOOK.

OF THE

Imitation of Christ:

BOOK THE SECOND.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE MORE
INTIMATE ENJOYMENT OF
THE SPIRITUAL LIFE:

CHAPTER I.

OF INTERNAL CONVERSATION.

I. “*THE kingdom of GOD is within you,*”
saith our blessed REDEEMER. Abandon,
therefore, the cares and pleasures of this
wretched world, and turn to the LORD with
all thy heart, and thy soul shall find rest. If
thou withdrawest thy attention from outward
things, and keepest it fixed upon what passeth
within thee, thou wilt soon perceive the
“*coming of the Kingdom of GOD;*” for “*the*
“*Kingdom of GOD*” is that “*peace and joy in*
“*the HOLY GHOST,*” which cannot be re-
ceived by sensual and worldly men. CHRIST
will come to thee, and bless thee with the
splendour of His Presence, if thou preparest
within thee an abode fit to receive Him: all

his glory and beauty are manifested within, and there He delights to dwell ; his visits there are frequent, his condescension amazing, his conversation sweet, his comforts refreshing, and the peace that He brings passeth all understanding.

2. O faithful soul, dispose thy heart for the reception of this Bridegroom, who will not fail to fulfill the promise which He hath made thee in these words ; “ *If a man love me, he will keep my words : and my Father will love him ; and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.* ” Give, therefore, free admission to CHRIST, and exclude all others as intruders. When thou possessest CHRIST, thou art rich, and canst want no other treasure : He will protect thee so powerfully, and provide for thee so liberally, that thou wilt not any more have need to depend upon the caprice of men. Men are changeable and evanescent as “ *the morning-cloud :* ” but CHRIST abideth eternally, and in Him the fountain of strength and peace will flow for ever.

3. Thou must not place any confidence in frail and mortal men, however endeared by reciprocal affection or offices of kindness : nor art thou to be grieved, when, from some change in their temper, they become unfriendly and injurious ; for men are inconstant as the wind, and he that is for thee to-day may
to-

to-morrow be against thee. But place thy whole confidence in GOD, and let Him be all thy fear, and all thy love : He will answer for thee against the great accuser, and do that which is most conducive to thy deliverance from evil.

4. Here thou hast “ *no continuing city ;*” and whatever be thy situation, thou art “ *a stranger and a pilgrim,*” and canst never obtain rest till thou art united to CHRIST. Why then dost thou stand gazing about the earth, when the earth is not the seat of thy repose ? Thy dwelling-place is in Heaven ; and earthly objects are only to be transiently viewed as thou returnest to it : they are all hurried away in the resistless current of time, and thy earthly life together with them ; beware, therefore, of adhering to them, lest thou be bound captive in their chains, and perish in their ruin. Let thy thoughts dwell with the MOST HIGH, and thy desire and prayer ascend without intermission to CHRIST.

5. When thou art not able to contemplate the high mysteries of Redemption, and the wonders of the glorified state ; think on the Passion of CHRIST, and let thy soul dwell securely in his most holy wounds : for if, in the severest tribulation, thou canst devoutly fly for refuge to the wounds and stripes of JESUS, thou wilt find abundant strength and comfort ; and wilt be so far from being dis-

turbed by the contempt of pride, that thou wilt bear with meekness and tranquillity the most envenomed shafts of calumny.

6. CHRIST was rejected of men; and, in the extremity of distress, forsaken by his disciples and friends. CHRIST chose to suffer thus, and to be thus deserted and despised; and dost thou complain of injury and contempt from others? CHRIST had enemies and slanderers; and wilt thou have all men to be thy friends and admirers? How can thy patience be crowned in Heaven, if thou wilt have no adversity to struggle with on earth? Canst thou be the friend and follower of CHRIST, and not the partaker of his sufferings? Thou must, therefore, suffer with CHRIST, and for His sake, if thou indeed desirest to reign with Him.

7. If thou hadst but once “*known the fellowship of the sufferings of JESUS,*” and been sensible, tho’ in a small degree, of the Divine ardour of his Love, thou wouldst be wholly indifferent about thy own personal share in the good and evil of the present life; and far from courting the favour and applause of men, wouldst rather rejoice to meet with their reproach and scorn: for the love of JESUS hath the peculiar virtue of making the soul in which it dwells, utterly despise itself. He that loves Jesus, who is the TRUTH, as the Saviour within him, and is delivered from
the

the slavery of inordinate desire, can always freely turn to GOD ; and, raising himself in spirit above himself, enjoy some portion of the blessed repose of Heaven.

8. That man is truly wise, and taught not of men, but of GOD, who perceiveth and judgeth of things as they are in themselves, and not as they are distinguished by names and general estimation. He that has known the power of the spiritual life, and withdrawn his attention from the perishing interests of the world, requires neither time nor place for the exercise of devotion : he can soon recollect himself, because he is never wholly engaged by sensible objects ; his tranquillity is not interrupted by bodily labour or inevitable business, but with calmness and composure he accommodates himself to all events as they take place ; he is not moved by the capricious humours, and perverse behaviour of men ; and his constant experience has convinced him, that the soul is no further obstructed and disturbed in its progress towards perfection, than as it is under the power and influence of the present life.

9. If the frame of thy spirit was in right order, and thou wert inwardly pure, all outward things would conduce to thy improvement in holiness, and work together for thy everlasting good : and because thou art now disgusted by a thousand objects, and disturbed

by a thousand events, it is evident, that thou art not yet “*crucified to the world, nor the world to thee.*”

10. Nothing entangles and defiles the heart of man so much, as the inordinate and impure love of the creatures : but if thou canst abandon the hope of consolation in the enjoyments of earthly and sensual life, thou wilt soon be able to contemplate the glory and blessedness of the Heavenly state ; and wilt frequently partake of that spiritual consolation, which the world can neither give nor take away.

CHAPTER II.

OF HUMBLE SUBMISSION TO RE- PROOF AND SHAME.

1. REGARD not much what man is for thee, nor what against thee ; but let it be thy principal care and concern, that GOD may be with thee in every purpose and action of thy life. Keep thy conscience pure, and GOD will be thy continual defence ; and him whom God defends, the malice of man hath no power to hurt. If thou hast learned to suffer in silent and persevering patience, thou shalt certainly see the salvation of the LORD :
He

He knoweth the properest season of thy deliverance, and will administer the most effectual means to accomplish it; and to his Blessed Will thou shouldst always be absolutely resigned. It is the prerogative of GOD, to give help under every trouble, and deliverance from all dishonour.

2. It is useful for preserving the humility of our spirit, that other men should know and should reprove our manifold transgressions: and in cases of injury among brethren, the more humble the acknowledgment of the offence is, the more effectually will the offended person be appeased and reconciled.

3. The humble man GOD protects and delivers; the humble He loves and comforts; to the humble He condescends; on the humble He bestows more abundant measures of his Grace, and after his humiliation exalts him to glory; to the humble He reveals the mysteries of Redemption, and sweetly invites and powerfully draws him to Himself. The humble man, tho' surrounded with the scorn and reproach of the world, is still in peace; for the stability of his peace resteth not upon the world, but upon GOD.

4. Do not think that thou hast made any progress towards perfection, till thou feelest that thou art "*less than the least of all*" human beings *.

* As a demand so mortifying to the pride of human virtue, will be more generally ascribed to the influence of the malignant

malignant gloom of a cloister, than to the dictates of THE SPIRIT OF TRUTH; I have selected the following passage from "The Rev. Mr. LAW's Serious Call to a Devout and Holy Life;" in which the obligations to the humility here required, are considered upon right principles, and determined with a power of demonstration peculiar to the writings of that excellent Divine.

"After this general consideration of the guilt of sin, which has done so much mischief to your nature, and exposed it to so great punishment; and made it so odious to GOD, that nothing less than so great an atonement of the SON of GOD, and so great repentance of our own, can restore us to the Divine Favour:

"Consider next *your own particular share* in the guilt of sin. And if you would know with what zeal you ought to repent yourself, consider how you would exhort another sinner to repentance; and what repentance and amendment you would expect from him, whom you judged to be *the greatest sinner* in the world.

"Now this case every man may justly reckon to be *his own*. And you may fairly look upon *yourself* to be *the greatest sinner* that you know in the world.

"For though you may know abundance of people to be guilty of some gross sins, with which you cannot charge yourself; yet you may justly condemn yourself, as the greatest sinner that you know. And that for these following reasons:

"First, Because you know more of the folly of your own heart, than you do of other peoples; and can charge yourself with various sins, that you only know of yourself, and cannot be sure that other sinners are guilty of them. So that as you know more of the *folly*, the *baseness*, the *pride*, the *deceitfulness* and *negligence* of your own heart, than you do of any one's else, so you have just reason to consider yourself as the greatest sinner that you know: because you know more of the *greatness of your own sins*, than you do of other peoples.

"Secondly, The greatness of our guilt arises chiefly from the greatness of GOD's goodness towards us; from the particular *graces*, and *blessings*, the *favours*, the *lights* and *instructions* that we have received from Him.

"Now

“ Now as these graces and blessings, and the multitude of GOD’s favours towards us, are the great aggravations of our sins against God, so they are *only known* to ourselves. And, therefore, every sinner knows more of *the aggravations of his own guilt*, than he does of other peoples; and consequently may justly look upon *himself*, to be *the greatest sinner* that he knows.

“ How good GOD has been to other sinners, what *light* and *instruction* He has vouchsafed to them; what *blessings* and *graces* they have received from Him; how often He has touched their hearts with *holy inspirations*; you cannot tell. But all this you know of *yourself*: therefore you know *greater aggravations of your own guilt*, and are able to charge yourself with *greater ingratitude* than you can charge upon other people.

“ And this is the reason, why *the greatest saints* have in all ages condemned themselves as *the greatest sinners*; because they knew *some aggravations of their own sins*, which they could not know of other peoples.

“ The right way, therefore, to fill your heart with true contrition, and a deep sense of your own sins, is this: You are not to consider or compare *the outward form, or course of your life*, with that of other peoples; and then think yourself to be less sinful than they, because the outward course of your life is less sinful than theirs:

“ But, in order to know your own guilt, you must consider *your own* particular circumstances; your *health*, your *sickness*, your *youth* or *age*, your *particular calling*, the happiness of your *education*, the degrees of *light* and *instruction* that you have received, the *good men* that you have conversed with, the *admonitions* that you have had, the *good books* that you have read, the numberless multitude of Divine *blessings*, *graces*, and *favours* that you have received, the *good motions of grace* that you have resisted, the *resolutions of amendment* that you have often broken, and the *checks of conscience* that you have disregarded.

“ For it is from *these circumstances*, that every one is to state the *measure* and *greatness* of his own guilt. And as you know only these circumstances of your *own sins*, so you must necessarily know how to charge yourself with *higher degrees of guilt*, than you can charge upon other people.

GOD

GOD Almighty knows greater finners, it may be, than you are; because He sees and knows the circumstances of all mens sins: but your own heart, if it is faithful to you, can discover no guilt *so great as your own*; because it can only see in you those circumstances, on which great part of the guilt of sin is founded.

“ You may see sins in other people, that you cannot charge upon yourself; but then you know a number of circumstances of your own guilt, that you cannot lay to their charge.

“ And perhaps, that person that appears at such a distance from your virtue, and so odious in your eyes, would have been *much better than you are*, had he been altogether in your circumstances, and received all the same favours and graces from GOD that you have.

“ This is a very *humbling reflection*, and very proper for those people to make, who measure their virtue, by comparing *the outward course of their lives* with that of other peoples. For look at whom you will, however different from you in his way of life, yet you can never know that *he has resisted so much* Divine Grace as you have; or that, in all your circumstances, he would not have been *much truer to his duty* than you are.

“ Now this is the reason why I desired you to consider, how you would exhort that man to confess and bewail his sins, whom you looked upon to be one of *the greatest sinners*. Because if you will deal justly, you must fix the charge at *home*, and look no farther than *yourself*. For GOD has given no one any power of knowing the *true greatness of any sins*, but his own: and, therefore, *the greatest sinner* that every one knows, is *himself*.

“ You may easily see how such an one, *in the outward course of his life*, breaks the law of GOD; but then you can never say, that had you been exactly in all his circumstances, you should not have broken them more than he has done.

“ A serious and frequent reflection upon these things, will mightily tend to humble us in our own eyes; make us very apprehensive of the greatness of our own guilt; and very tender in censuring and condemning other people. For who would dare to be severe against other people, when, for aught he can tell, the severity of GOD may be more due to him,
than

CHAPTER III.

OF PEACEFULNESS.

I. THOU must first secure the peace of thy own breast, before thou wilt be qualified to restore peace to others. Peacefulness is a more useful acquisition than learning. The wrathful and turbulent man, who is always ready to impute wrong, turneth even good into evil; the peaceful man turneth all things into good. He that is established in peace, is exempt from suspicion; but he that is discon-

than to them? Who would exclaim against the guilt of others, when he considers that *he knows more of the greatness of his own guilt*, than he does of theirs?

“How often you have resisted GOD’s Holy Spirit; how many motives to goodness you have disregarded; how many particular blessings you have sinned against; how many good resolutions you have broken; how many checks and admonitions of conscience you have stifled; *you very well know*: But how often this has been the case of other sinners, *you know not*. And, therefore, *the greatest sinner that you know*, must be *yourself*.

“Whenever, therefore, you are *angry* at sin or sinners, whenever you *read* or *think* of GOD’s indignation and wrath at wicked men; let this teach you to be the most severe in your censure, and most humble and contrite in the acknowledgment and confession of *your own sins*; because YOU KNOW OF NO SINNER EQUAL TO YOURSELF.”

Serious Call to a Devout and Holy Life, Octavo edition 1729; p. 473—479.

tented

tented and proud, is tormented with jealousy of every kind: he has no rest himself, and he will not allow rest to others; he speaketh what he ought to suppress, and suppresseth what he ought to speak; he is watchful in observing the duty of others, and totally negligent with respect to his own. But let thy zeal be exercised in thy own reformation, before it attempts the reformation of thy neighbour.

2. Thou art very skilful and ingenious in palliating and excusing thy own evil actions, but canst not frame an apology for the actions of others, nor admit it when it is offered by themselves. It would, however, be more just, always to excuse thy brother, and accuse thyself. If thou desirest to be borne with, thou must bear also with others. O consider, at what a dreadful distance thou standest, from that Charity, which "*hopeth, believeth, and beareth all things;*" and from that Humility, which, in a truly contrite heart, knoweth no indignation nor resentment against any being but itself.

3. It is so far from being difficult to live in peace with the gentle and the good, that it is highly grateful to all that are inclined to cultivate peace; for we naturally love those most, whose sentiments and dispositions correspond most with our own: but to maintain peace with the churlish and perverse, the irregular
and

and impatient, and those that most contradict and oppose our opinions and desires, is an heroic and glorious attainment, which only an extraordinary measure of Grace can enable us to acquire.

4. But there are some, that preserve the peace of their own breasts, and live in peace with all about them: and there are some, that having no peace in themselves, are continually employed in disturbing the peace of others; they are the tormentors of their brethren, and still more the tormentors of their own hearts: there are also some, who not only retain their own peace, but make it their principal business to restore peace to all that want it. After all, however, the most perfect peace to which we can attain in this miserable life, consists rather in meek and patient suffering, than in an exemption from adversity; and he that has most learnt to suffer, will certainly possess the greatest share of peace: he is the conqueror of himself, the lord of the world, the friend of CHRIST, and the heir of Heaven!

CHAPTER IV.

OF SIMPLICITY AND PURITY.

1. SIMPLICITY and purity are the two wings, with which man soars above the earth and all temporary nature. Simplicity is in the intention;

intention; purity, in the affection: simplicity turns to GOD, purity unites with and enjoys Him.

2. No good action would be difficult and painful, if thou wert free from inordinate affection: and this internal freedom thou wilt then enjoy, when it is the one simple intention of thy mind to obey the Will of GOD and do good to thy fellow-creatures.

3. If thy heart was rightly disposed, every creature would be a book of Divine knowledge; a mirror of life, in which thou mightest contemplate the eternal power and beneficence of the AUTHOR OF LIFE; for there is no creature, however small and abject, that is not a monument of the Goodness of GOD.

4. Such as is the frame of the spirit, such is its perception and judgment of outward things. If thou hadst simplicity and purity, thou wouldst be able to comprehend all things without error, and behold them without danger: the pure heart safely pervades, not only Heaven, but hell.

5. If there be joy in this world, who possesses it more than the pure in heart? And if there be tribulation and anguish, who suffers them more than the wounded spirit?

6. As iron cast into the fire is purified from its rust, and becomes bright as the fire itself; so the soul that in simplicity and purity turns and adheres to GOD, is delivered from the corruption of animal nature, and changed
into

into the “*new man*,” formed “*after the image of Him who created him*.”

7. Those who suffer the desire of perfection to grow cold and languid, are terrified at the most inconsiderable difficulties, and soon driven back to seek consolation in the enjoyments of sensual life: but those, in whom that desire is kept alive and invigorated by continual self-denial, and a steady perseverance in that narrow path in which CHRIST has called us to follow Him, find every step they take more and more easy, and feel those labours light that were once thought insurmountable.

CHAPTER V.

OF PERSONAL ATTENTION.

1. WE ought to place but little confidence in ourselves, because we are often destitute both of grace and understanding. The light we have is small, and that is soon lost by negligence. We are even insensible of this inward darkness: we do wrong, and aggravate our guilt by excusing it; we are impelled by passion, and mistake it for zeal; we severely reprove little failings in our brethren, and pass over enormous sins in ourselves; we quickly feel, and perpetually brood over, the sufferings

G

that

that are brought upon us by others, but have no thought of what others suffer from us. If, however, a man would but truly and impartially examine himself, he would find but little cause to judge severely of his neighbour.

2. The spiritual man prefers to all other cares, the care of his own improvement; and he that is strictly watchful over his own conduct, will easily be silent about the conduct of others. But to the Divine life of the spiritual man thou wilt never attain, unless thou canst withdraw thy attention from all persons, and the concerns of all, and fix it wholly upon thyself. He that purely and simply intends and desires the re-union of his soul with GOD, will not easily be moved by what he hears or sees in the world.

3. Tell me, if thou canst, where thou hast been wandering, when thou art absent from thy own breast: and after thou hast run about, and taken a hasty view of the actions and affairs of men, what advantage bringest thou home to thy neglected and forsaken self? He that desires peace of heart, and re-union with the Divine Nature, must cast all persons and things behind him, and keep GOD and his own spirit only in his view.

4. As thy progress to perfection depends much upon thy freedom from the cares and pleasures of the world, it must be proportionably obstructed by whatever degree of value they

they have in thy affections. Abandon, therefore, all hope of consolation from created things, not only as vain but dangerous; and esteem nothing honourable, nothing pleasing, nothing great and worthy the desire of an immortal spirit, but GOD, and that which immediately tends to the improvement of thy state in Him. The soul that truly loves GOD, despises all that is inferiour to GOD. It is GOD alone, the Infinite and Eternal, who filleth all things, that is the life, light, and peace of all blessed spirits.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE JOY OF A GOOD CONSCIENCE.

1. THE “*rejoicing*” of a good man is “*the testimony of his conscience.*” A pure conscience is the ground of perpetual exultation; it will support a man under the severest trials, and enable him to rejoice in the depths of adversity: but an evil conscience, in every state of life, is full of disquietude and fear. Thou wilt always enjoy tranquillity, if thy heart condemn thee not.

2. Do not hope to rejoice, but when thou hast done well. The wicked cannot have true joy, nor taste of inward peace: for “*there is*

“no peace to the wicked,” saith the LORD;
*“but they are like the troubled sea when it
“cannot rest, whose waters cast up mire and
“dirt.”* If they say, *“We are in peace;
“no evil shall come upon us; and who will
“dare to hurt us?”* believe them not: for the
anger of the LORD will suddenly rise up
within them; and their boasting shall vanish
like smoke, and the thoughts of their heart
shall perish.

3. To *“glory in tribulation,”* is not difficult
to him that loveth; for thus to glory, is
*“to glory in the cross of our Lord JESUS
“CHRIST.”* That glory is short and painful,
which is given and received among men: it
comes with fear and envy, and vanishes in
disappointment and regret. The glory of the
just is proclaimed by the voice of conscience,
and not by the mouth of men: their joy is
from GOD, and in GOD; and their rejoicing
is founded in Truth. He that aspires after
true and eternal glory, values not that which
is temporal; and he that seeketh after the
temporal glory of the earth, or that does not
despise it from his heart, proves, that he nei-
ther loves nor considers the eternal glory of
Heaven.

4. He only can have great tranquillity,
whose happiness depends not on the praise and
dispraise of men. If thy conscience was
pure, thou wouldst be contented in every
condi-

condition, and undisturbed by the opinions and reports of men concerning thee; for their commendations can add nothing to thy holiness, nor their censures take any thing from it: what thou art, thou art; nor can the praise of the whole world make thee greater in the sight of GOD. The more, therefore, thy attention is fixed upon the true state of thy spirit, the less wilt thou regard what is said of thee in the world. Men look only on the face, but “*GOD looketh on and searcheth the heart;*” men consider only the outward act, but GOD the inward principle from which it springs.

5. To think of having done well without self-esteem, is an evidence of true humility; as it is of great inward purity and faith, to abandon the hope of consolation from created things. He that seeketh not a witness for himself among men, shews that he has committed his whole state to GOD, the witness in his own breast: for it is “*not he who commendeth himself,*” nor he who is commended by others, that “*is approved;*” but him only, saith the blessed PAUL, “*whom GOD commendeth.*”

6. To walk in the presence of GOD manifested in the heart, and not to be enslaved by any worldly affection, is the state of the internal man.

CHAPTER VII.

OF THE LOVE OF JESUS ABOVE
ALL.

1. BLESSED is the man who knoweth what it is to love JESUS, and for his sake to despise himself. To preserve this love, thou must relinquish the love of thyself and all creatures; for JESUS will be loved alone. The love of the creatures is deceitful and unstable; the love of JESUS is faithful and permanent. He that adhereth to any creature, must fail when the creature faileth; but he that adhereth to JESUS, will be established with Him for ever. Love Him and cherish his love, who, tho' the heavens and the earth should be dissolved, will not forsake thee, nor suffer thee to perish. Thou must one day be separated from all that thou seeest and lovest among created things, whether thou wilt or not: living and dying, therefore, adhere to JESUS, and securely commit thyself to his faithful protection, who, when all temporal nature fails, is alone able to sustain thee.

2. Such is the purity of thy Beloved, that He will admit of no rival for thy love; but will Himself have the sole possession of thy heart, and, like a king, reign there with sovereign authority, as on his proper throne.

3. If

3. If thy heart was emptied of self-love, and of the love of creatures whom thou lovest only for thy own sake, JESUS would dwell with thee continually. But whatever love thou hast for men, of which JESUS is not the principle and end, and whatever be their returns of love to thee, thou wilt find both to be utterly vain and worthless. O place not thy confidence in man, lean not upon a hollow reed! for “*all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass; the grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away.*”

4. Of men thou regardest only the outward appearance, and, therefore, art soon deceived; and while thou seekest relief and comfort from them, thou must meet with disappointment and distress. If in all things thou seekest only JESUS, thou wilt surely find Him in all; and if thou seekest thyself, thou wilt, indeed, find thyself, but to thy own destruction: for he who in all things seeks not JESUS alone, involves himself in more evil, than the world and all his enemies could heap upon him.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF THE FRIENDSHIP OF JESUS.

1. WHEN JESUS is present, all is well, and no labour seems difficult; but when He is absent, the least adversity is found insupportable. When JESUS is silent, all comfort withers away; but the moment He speaks again, tho' but a single word, the soul rises from her distress, and feels her comfort revive in greater power. Thus Mary rose hastily from the place where she sat weeping for the death of Lazarus, when Martha said to her, "*The Master is come, and calleth for thee.*" Blessed is the hour, when JESUS calls us from affliction and tears, to partake of the joys of His Spirit!

2. How great is the aridity and hardness of thy heart, without JESUS! how great its vanity and folly, when it desireth any good but Him! Is not the loss of Him greater than the loss of the world? for what can the world profit thee, without JESUS? To be without JESUS, is to be in the depths of hell: to be with Him, is to be in Paradise. While JESUS is with thee, no enemy hath power to hurt thee. He that findeth JESUS, findeth a treasure
sure

sure of infinite value, a good transcending all that can be called good : and he that loseth JESUS, loseth more than the whole world ; for he loseth the heavenly life and light of his own soul. That man only is poor in this world, who liveth without JESUS ; and that man only is rich, with whom JESUS delights to dwell.

3. It requires great skill to converse with JESUS, and great wisdom to know how to keep Him ; but not the skill of men, nor the wisdom of this world. Be humble and peaceful, and JESUS will come to thee ; be devout and meek, and He will dwell with thee. But thou mayst soon drive away JESUS from thy heart, and lose the Grace which He has given thee, by turning aside to the enjoyments of the world ; and when thou hast driven away and lost Him, to whom wilt thou then fly, and where wilt thou find a friend ? Without a friend, life is unenjoyed ; and unless JESUS be thy chosen friend, infinitely loved and preferred above all others, life will be to thee a scene of desolation and distress. It is madness, therefore, to place thy confidence and delight in any other : rather choose that the whole world should combine to oppose and injure thee, than that JESUS should be offended at thy preferring the world to Him. Of all that are dear to thee, then, let JESUS be the peculiar and supreme object of thy love.

Men,

Men, even those to whom thou art united by the ties of nature and the reciprocations of friendship, are to be loved only for the sake of JESUS; but JESUS is to be loved for Himself: JESUS alone is to be loved without reserve and without measure; because, of all that we can possibly love, He alone is infinite in goodness and faithfulness. For his sake, and in the power of his love, thy enemies are to be dear to thee, as well as thy friends: and let it be thy continual prayer for all, even for thy enemies, that all may be blest with the knowledge and love of Him.

4. Do not desire to be admired and praised for the goodness that is in thee, as if it was thy own; for the praise of being good, is the prerogative of GOD: His Goodness alone is absolute and underived; and thou art good, only by the communication of that Goodness which from eternity to eternity dwells essentially in Him. Neither desire to engage the affections of any particular person, nor suffer thy own affections to be engaged by any: but let it be thy sole wish and joy, to have JESUS dwell in thy own heart, and the hearts of all others, as the eternal life, light, and peace of all.

5. Aspire after such inward purity and freedom, that no affection to any creature may have power to perplex and enslave thee: thou must have a heart, divested of all selfish affections

fections and earthly desires, before thou wilt be able, in peaceful vacancy, to “*stand still, and see the salvation of the LORD.*” Indeed, to this exalted state thou canst not arrive, without the prevention and attraction of His Grace; which, by delivering thee from all attachment to created life, will bring thee into union with His Blessed Spirit, and He will be one with thee, and thou with Him.

6. When the grace of GOD thus liveth and reigneth in the heart of man, he hath power to “*do all things;*” but when its Divine influence is suspended, he feels himself left in the poverty and weakness of fallen nature, exposed to the lash of every affliction. Yet, in this forlorn and desolate state, thou must not despair; but with a calm and meek spirit resign thyself to the Divine Will, and for the Glory of CHRIST patiently bear whatever befalls thee; remembering, that winter is invariably succeeded by summer, night by day, and darkness and tempest by serenity and sunshine.

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE DISCONSOLATE STATE.

1. IT requires no considerable effort to despise human consolation, when we are possessed of Divine: but it is transcendent greatness, to bear

bear the want of both; and, without self-condolance, or the least retrospection on our own imaginary worth, patiently to suffer “*desolation of heart*” for the glory of GOD. What singular attainment is it, to be peaceful and devout, while “*the light of GOD’s countenance is lifted up upon thee?*” for this is the hour that all creatures most desire. That man cannot but find his journey easy and delightful, whom the Grace of GOD sustains: and what wonder, if he neither feels burthen, nor meets with obstruction, when he is supported by Omnipotence, and conducted by Truth.

2. We perpetually seek after consolation, from the dread of the want of it; and it is with difficulty that man is so far divested of self, as not to seek it in his earthly and selfish state. The holy martyr, Laurence, overcame the world and himself, in subduing his great affection for his good bishop, Xystus: for, tho’ all that was delightful to him in this life, centered in their personal endearments; yet, with calm resolution he bore a sudden and violent separation from him, to which death only could put an end. By the love of GOD, therefore, he overcame the love of man, and steadily preferred the Divine Will to the comforts of human converse. With the same patient resignation, must thou also, for the love of GOD, learn to part with thy dearest
and

and most intimate friend. And some argument against impatient sorrow at such events, may be drawn from the inevitable mortality which sin has introduced; under whose universal dominion, it must be the trial of every man, to be separated from that which in this world he held most dear.

3. It requires long and severe conflicts to subdue the earthly and selfish nature, and turn all the desire of the soul to GOD. He that trusts to his own wisdom and strength, is easily seduced to seek repose in human consolations: but he that truly loves CHRIST, and depends only upon his Redeeming Power within him, as the principle of holiness and truth, turns not aside to such vain comforts, nor, indeed, seeks after any of the delights of sense; but rather chooses the severe exercises of self-denial, and, for the sake of CHRIST, to endure the most painful labours.

4. When, therefore, GOD bestows upon thee the consolations of the Spirit, receive them with all thankfulness: but remember, they are His gift, not thy desert; and instead of being elate, careless, and presuming, be more humble, more watchful and devout in all thy conduct: for the hour of light and peace will soon pass away, and darkness and temptation will succeed. Yet when this awful change intervenes, do not immediately despair, but with humility and patience wait for the
return

return of the heavenly visitation; for GOD, who is infinite in Goodness as well as in Power, is both able and willing to renew the bounties of His Grace in more abundant measures.

5. This vicissitude of day and night in the spiritual life, is neither new nor unexpected to those that are acquainted with the ways of GOD; for the ancient prophets and most eminent saints have all experienced an alternative of visitation and desertion. As an instance of this, the Royal Prophet thus describes his own case: “ *When I was in prosperity,*” says he, and my heart was filled with the treasures of Grace, “ *I said, I shall never be moved.*” But these treasures being soon taken away, and feeling in himself the poverty of fallen nature, he adds; “ *Thou didst turn thy face from me, and I was troubled.*” Yet in this disconsolate state he does not despair; but with more ardour raises his desire and prayer to GOD: “ *Unto thee, O LORD, will I cry, and I will make my supplication unto my GOD.*” He then testifies, that his prayer is accepted, and his prosperous state restored: “ *The LORD hath heard me, and hath had mercy upon me; the LORD is become my helper.*” And to shew how this mercy and help were manifested, he adds; “ *Thou hast turned my mourning into joy, and hast compassed me about with gladness.*”

“gladness.” And if this interchange of light and darkness, joy and sorrow, was the common state of the greatest saints; surely, such poor and infirm creatures as we are, ought not to despair, when we are sometimes elevated by fervour, and sometimes depressed by coldness: for the HOLY SPIRIT cometh and goeth, *“according to the good pleasure of His Will;”* and upon this principle the blessed Job saith, *“Thou visitest man in the morning, and of a sudden thou provest him.”*

6. In what, therefore, can I hope, or where ought I to place my confidence, but in Infinite Goodness, and the life, light, and peace of the DIVINE SPIRIT? For whether the conversation of holy men, the endearing kindness of faithful friends, the melody of musick in psalms and hymns, the entertainment of ingenious books, nay, the instructions of the Oracles of GOD; whether any or all these advantages are present, what do they all avail, what joy can they dispense, when the HOLY SPIRIT is withdrawn from my soul, and I am left to the poverty and wretchedness of my fallen self? In such a state, no remedy remains but meek and humble patience, and the total surrender of my will to the Blessed Will of GOD.

7. I never yet found a man so invariably holy and devout, as not to have experienced the absence of Grace, and felt some decay of
spiritual

spiritual fervour: and from this severe trial no saint has been exempt, to whatever degrees of rapture and elevation his spirit may have been exalted. It is a trial, however, that when patiently endured for the love of GOD, prepares and qualifies the soul for the high state of Divine Contemplation. It may always be considered also as the sign of approaching comfort: and to those who suffer it with resignation, humility, and faith, is the uninterrupted felicity of Paradise chiefly promised; “*to him that overcometh,*” saith He who is “THE FIRST AND THE LAST, *will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the Paradise of GOD.*”

8. The ground of this vicissitude of comfort and distress, is, in general, this: the consolations of the Spirit are given to man, to enable him to bear the adversity of his fallen state; and they are taken away, lest he be so much elevated with the gift, as to forget the Giver.

9. After all, remember, that the devil slumbereth not, nor is the flesh yet dead: be, therefore, continually prepared for contest; for, on the right hand, and on the left, thou art beset with enemies that are never at rest.

CHAPTER X.

OF TRUE THANKFULNESS FOR
THE GRACE OF GOD.

1. WHY seekest thou rest, when thou art born to labour? Dispose thyself for patience, rather than for consolation; rather for bearing the Cross, than for receiving joy.

2. Who among those that are devoted to the world, would not gladly receive the joys and consolations of the Spirit, if they could be obtained without relinquishing the pursuits of honour, wealth, and pleasure? The joys and consolations of the Spirit transcend the delights of the world and the pleasures of sense, as far as Heaven transcends the earth: these are either impure or vain; those alone are holy, substantial, delightful, the fruits of that new nature which is born of GOD. But those no man can enjoy at what time, and in what measure, he pleases; and he finds, that the seasons of temptation return soon, and last long.

3. False freedom and self-confidence greatly oppose the Heavenly Visitation. GOD, who is infinite in Goodness, manifests that Goodness, in bestowing the gift of his HOLY
H SPIRIT;

SPIRIT; man, who is wholly evil, shews that evil, in not rendering back the gift with the thankfulness and praise of dependent wretchedness: the power of the gift is destroyed by ingratitude to the Giver; the course of Grace is stopt, by diverting and confining its streams, and not suffering them to flow back to their Divine source. For the influences of GOD's SPIRIT are in large measures poured only upon the truly thankful, and from the proud is taken away that which is always given to the Humble.

4. I wish for no consolation that robs me of compunction; nor aim at any contemplation that will exalt me into pride: for every thing that is high, is not holy; nor every desire pure; nor every thing that is sweet, good; nor every thing that is dear to man, pleasing to GOD. But acceptable, beyond measure, is that Grace, by which I am made more humble and fearful, and more disposed to deny and renounce myself: for he that hath experienced the Divine gift, and been taught the infinite value of it, by feeling its loss, so far from daring to appropriate any thing good to himself, will in the deepest humility acknowledge and lament the poverty and nakedness of his fallen spirit. “*Render, therefore, unto GOD, that which is GOD's,*” and take to thyself that which is properly thy own; give Him the glory of all thy good, and leave for thyself only the shame and punishment of all thy evil.

5. Set

5. Set thyself in the lowest place, and the highest shall be given thee; for the more lofty the building is designed to be, the deeper must the foundations of it be laid. The greatest saints in the sight of GOD, are the least in their own esteem; and the height of their glory is always in proportion to the depth of their humility. Those that are filled with true and heavenly glory, have no place for the desire of that which is earthly and vain; being rooted and established in GOD, they cannot possibly be lifted up in self-exaltation. Whatever good they have, they acknowledge it to be received; and ascribing the glory of it to the Supreme Author of Good, they *“seek
“ not honour one of another, but the honour
“ that cometh from GOD alone:”* and that GOD may be glorified in Himself, and in all his saints, is the prevailing desire of their hearts, and the principal end of all their actions.

6. Be thankful for what thou receivest, and thou wilt be deemed worthy to receive more. Let that which is thought the least of GOD's gifts, be unto thee even as the greatest; and that which is held contemptible, as a singular favour: the dignity of the Giver confers dignity on all his gifts; and none can be small, that is bestowed by the Supreme GOD. Even pain and punishment from Him, are to be gratefully received; for whatever He permit-

teth to befall us, He permitteth it to promote the important business of our Redemption. Let him, therefore, that desireth to preserve the Grace of GOD in his heart, be thankful when it is given, and patient when it is taken away; let him pray ardently for its return; and be particularly watchful and humble, that he may lose it no more.

CHAPTER XI.
OF THE SMALL NUMBER OF THOSE
THAT LOVE THE CROSS.

1. JESUS hath now many lovers of his heavenly kingdom, but few bearers of his Cross; He hath many that desire to partake of his comforts, but few that are willing to share in his distress; He finds many companions of his table, but few of his hours of abstinence. All are disposed to rejoice with JESUS, but few to suffer sorrow for his sake: many follow Him to the breaking of bread, but few to the drinking of his bitter cup; many attend with reverence on the glory of his miracles, but few follow the ignominy of his Cross. Many love JESUS, while they are free from adversity; many praise and bless Him, while they receive his

his consolations: but if JESUS hide his face, and leave them but a little, their confidence and their devotion vanish, and they sink either into murmur or despair.

2. But they who love JESUS for Himself, and not for their own personal comfort, will bless Him in the depths of tribulation and distress, as well as in the most exalted state of consolation: nay, should He continue to withhold his consolations from them, they would still continue to praise Him, still give Him thanks. O mighty power of the pure love of JESUS, unadulterated with any base mixture of self-love and self-interest! Do not they deserve the name of hirelings, who are for ever seeking after comfort? do not all prove, that they are lovers of themselves, more than lovers of CHRIST, who desire and think of nothing, but the repose and pleasure of their own minds?

3. Where is the man that serveth GOD, without the hope of reward? Where, indeed, is that true "*poverty of spirit*" to be found, which is divested of all that is thought rich and valuable in the creatures and self? This is "*the pearl of great price*," that is worthy to be fought after to the utmost bounds of nature! Tho' a man give all his substance to feed the poor, it is nothing; tho' he mortify the desires of flesh and blood by severe penance, still it is of little importance; tho'

he comprehend the vast extent of science, yet he is far behind; and tho' he hath the splendour of illustrious virtue, and the ardour of exalted devotion, still he will want much, if he still wants this "*one thing needful*," this poverty of spirit, which, after abandoning the creatures about him, requires him to abandon himself; to go wholly out of himself; to retain not the least leaven of self-love and self-esteem; but, when he hath finished his course of duty, to know and feel, with the same certainty as he feels the motion of his heart, that he himself hath done nothing.

4. Such a man will set no value upon those attainments, which, if under the power of self-love, he would highly esteem; but, in concurrence with the voice of TRUTH, "*when he has done all that is commanded him*," he will always freely pronounce himself "*an unprofitable servant*." This is that poverty and nakedness of spirit, which can say, with the Psalmist, LORD, in myself, "*I am poor and desolate!*" And yet there is none so rich, none so free, none so powerful, as he, who renouncing himself and all creatures, can remain peaceably in the most abject state of abasement.

CHAPTER XII.

OF THE NECESSITY OF BEARING
THE CROSS.

1. THIS saying seems hard to all: “*Deny thyself, take up thy Cross, and follow me.*” But as hard a saying will be heard, when the same Divine voice shall pronounce, “*Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire!*” They, therefore, who can now attentively hear, and patiently follow the call to bear the Cross, will not be terrified at the sentence of the final judgment. In that awful day, the banner of the Cross will be displayed in heaven; and all who have conformed their lives to CHRIST Crucified, will draw near to CHRIST the Judge, with holy confidence. Why, then, dost thou fear to take up the Cross, which will direct thee to the path that leads to the kingdom of GOD?

2. In the Cross is life, in the Cross health, in the Cross protection from every enemy; from the Cross are derived heavenly meekness, true fortitude, the joys of the Spirit, the conquest of self, the perfection of holiness! There is no redemption, no foundation for the hope of the Divine life, but in the Cross.

Take up thy Cross, therefore, and follow JESUS, in the path that leads to everlasting peace. He hath gone before, bearing that Cross upon which he died for thee; that thou mightest follow, patiently bearing thy own Cross, and upon that die to thyself for Him: and if we die with Him, we shall also live with Him; “*if we are partakers of his sufferings, we shall be partakers also of his glory.*”

3. Behold, all consists in the death of self upon the Cross; and there is no means to obtain life and peace, but by daily dying upon the Cross to all the appetites and passions of fallen nature! Go where thou wilt, seek after what methods thou pleasest to accomplish thy Redemption, thou canst not find a sublimer way above, nor a more secure way below, than this of dying upon the Cross.

4. Tho’ thou disposest all thy affairs according to thy own fancy, and conductest them by the dictates of thy own judgment, still thou wilt continually meet with some evil, which thou must necessarily bear, either with or against thy will; and, therefore, wilt continually find the Cross: thou wilt feel either pain of body, or distress and anguish of spirit. Sometimes thou wilt experience the absence of Grace; sometimes thy neighbour will put thy meekness and patience to the test; and, what is more than this, thou wilt sometimes
feel

feel a burthen in thyself, which no human help can remove, no earthly comfort lighten; but bear it thou must, as long as it is the Will of GOD to continue it upon thee. It is the Blessed Will of GOD, in permitting no ray of comfort to visit us in the darkness of distress, that we should learn such profound humility and submission, as to resign our whole state present and future to His absolute disposal.

5. No heart can have so true a sense of the sufferings of CHRIST, as that which has suffered in the same kind. The Cross is always ready, and waits for thee in every place. Run where thou wilt, thou canst not avoid it; for wherever thou runnest, thou takest thyself with thee, and art always sure of finding thyself. Turn which way thou wilt, either to the things above, or to the things below; to that which is within, or that which is without thee; thou wilt in all certainly find the Cross: and if thou wouldst enjoy peace, and obtain the unfading crown of glory, it is necessary that in every place, and in all events, thou shouldst bear it willingly, and “*in patience possess thy soul.*”

6. If thou bearest the Cross willingly, it will soon bear thee, and lead thee beyond the reach of suffering, where “*GOD shall take away all sorrow from thy heart.*” But if thou bearest it with reluctance, it will be a burthen

burthen inexpressibly painful, which yet thou must still feel; and by every impatient effort to throw it from thee, thou wilt only render thyself less and less able to sustain its weight, till at length it crush thee.

7. Why hopest thou to avoid that, from which no human being has been exempt? Who among the saints hath accomplished his pilgrimage in this world, without adversity and distress? Even our blessed LORD passed not one hour of his most holy life, without tasting “*the bitter cup that was given Him to drink:*” and, of Himself, He saith, that “*it behoved Him to suffer, and to rise from the dead, and so to enter into his glory.*” And why dost thou seek any other path to glory, but that, in which, bearing the Cross, thou art called to follow “*the Captain of thy salvation?*” The life of CHRIST was a continual Cross, an unbroken chain of sufferings; and desirest thou a perpetuity of repose and joy? Thou art deceived, wretchedly deceived, if thou expectest any thing but tribulation; for this mortal life is full of misery, and every part of it is inscribed with the Cross.

8. The regenerate man, as he becomes more spiritualized, has a quicker discernment of the Cross, wherever it meets him; and his sense of the evils of his exile, as the punishment of his fallen life, increases in proportion to his love of GOD, and desire of re-union
with

with Him. But this man, thus sensible of misery, derives hope even from his sufferings; for while he sustains them with meek and humble submission, their weight is continually diminishing; and what to carnal minds is the object of terrour, is to him a pledge of heavenly comfort. He feels, that the strength, the life, and peace, of the New-Man, rise from the troubles, the decay, and death of the old: and from his desire of conformity to his Crucified Saviour, as the only means of restoration to his first perfect state in GOD, he derives so much strength and comfort under the severest tribulations, that he wisheth not to live a moment without them. Of the truth of this, the blessed Paul is an illustrious instance; who says of himself, “ *I take pleasure* “ *in infirmities, in reproaches, in necessities, in* “ *persecutions, in distresses, for CHRIST’s sake;* “ *for when I am weak, then am I strong.*”

9. This desire of suffering, however, and this meek and patient submission under it, is not the effect of any power which is inherent in man, and which he can boast of as his own; but is the pure fruit of the Grace of CHRIST, operating so powerfully in the fallen soul, as to make it love and embrace that, which it would naturally abhor and shun. No: it is not in man, to love and bear the Cross; to resist the appetites of the body, and bring them under absolute subjection to the Spirit;
to

to shun honours; to receive affronts with meekness; to despise himself, and to wish to be despised by others; to bear with calm resignation, the loss of fortune, health, and friends; and to have no desire after the riches, the honours, and pleasures of the world. If thou dependest upon thy own will and strength to do and to suffer all this, thou wilt find thyself as unable to accomplish it, as to create another world; but if thou turnest to the Divine Power within thee, and trustest only to that as the doer and sufferer of all, the strength of Omnipotence will be imparted to thee, and the world and the flesh shall be put under thy feet: armed with this holy confidence, and defended by the Cross of CHRIST, thou needest not fear the most malignant efforts of thy great adversary the devil.

10. Dispose thyself, therefore, like a true and faithful servant, to bear with fortitude and resolution the Cross of thy blessed LORD, to which He was nailed in testimony of his infinite love of thee. Prepare thy spirit to suffer patiently the innumerable inconveniences and troubles of this miserable life; for these thou wilt find, tho' thou runnest to the ends of the earth, or hidest thyself in its deepest caverns; and it is patient suffering alone, that can either disarm their power, or heal the wounds they have made. Drink freely and affectionately of thy LORD's bitter cup,

cup, if thou desirest to manifest thy friendship for Him, and “*the part thou hast with Him.*” Resign to the Will of GOD the dispensation of his comforts, and wish only for tribulation, in its innumerable forms, as the choicest blessing of thy earthly life; for “*the sufferings of the present time,*” if they were all accumulated for thy portion, “*are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in thee.*”

11. When thou hast obtained so true a conquest over self-love, that the love of CHRIST shall make tribulation not only easy but desirable; then all will be well with thee, and thou wilt have found the gate of Paradise: but while every tribulation is painful and grievous, and it is the desire of thy soul to avoid it, thou canst not but be wretched, and what thou labourest to shun will follow thee wherever thou goest. The patient enduring of the Cross, and the death of self upon it, are the indispensable duty of fallen man; and it is by these alone, that he can be delivered from his darkness, corruption, and misery, and restored to the possession of life, light, and peace. Tho', like St. Paul, thou wert “*caught up to the third heaven,*” yet thou wouldst not be exempt from suffering; for of St. Paul himself, his Redeemer said, “*I will shew him how great things he must suffer, for my name's sake.*” To suffer, therefore, is

is thy portion ; and to suffer patiently and willingly, is the great testimony of thy love and allegiance to thy LORD.

12. O that thou wert worthy to suffer any “ *affliction for the name of JESUS!* ” what glory would be laid up in store for thyself, what joy would be diffused among the saints of GOD, what holy emulation excited in thy neighbour ! Tho’ patience is extolled by all, yet few are willing to suffer : but thou mayst well suffer a little for CHRIST, when men endure so much for the world.

13. Know, that thy life must be a continual death to the appetites and passions of fallen nature ; and know also, that the more perfectly thou diest to thyself, the more truly wilt thou begin to live to GOD. No man is qualified to understand the stupendous truths of Redemption, till he has subdued his impatience and self-love, and is ready to suffer any adversity for the sake of CHRIST. This is so acceptable to GOD, and so beneficial to the soul, that if the condition of thy present life was left to thy own choice, thou shouldst prefer suffering affliction for the sake of CHRIST, to the uninterrupted enjoyment of repose and comfort ; for this will render thee conformable to CHRIST, and all his saints. Indeed, the perfection of our state, and our acceptableness with GOD, depend more upon the patient suffering of long and severe distress, than upon continual consolation and ecstasy.

14. If

14. If any way, but bearing the Cross and dying to his own will, could have redeemed man from that fallen life of Self in flesh and blood, which is his alienation from, and enmity to GOD; CHRIST would have taught it in his Word, and established it by his Example. But of all universally that desire to follow Him, He has required the bearing of the Cross; and without exception has said to all, “*If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, take up his Cross, and follow me.*”

15. When, therefore, we have read all books, and examined all methods, to find out the path that will lead us back to the blessed state from which we have wandered; this conclusion only will remain, “*That, thro’ much tribulation, we must enter into the kingdom of GOD.*”

THE END OF THE SECOND BOOK.

CHAPTER XXV

...the way, but having the Cross and
...to his own will, and his intention
...from that of his life and
...which is the true and en-
...to GOD, and would have
...in his Word, and established
...the Son of all universality, and
...to follow him, and to be
...of the Cross, and without
...to all, and to all, and to
...the other things, and to
...follow me."

...the Son of all universality, and
...to follow him, and to be
...of the Cross, and without
...to all, and to all, and to
...the other things, and to
...follow me."

THE END OF THE SECOND BOOK
...the Son of all universality, and
...to follow him, and to be
...of the Cross, and without
...to all, and to all, and to
...the other things, and to
...follow me."

OF THE

Imitation of Christ:

BOOK THE THIRD.

OF DIVINE ILLUMINATION:

CHAPTER I.

OF THE BLESSEDNESS OF INTERNAL
CONVERSATION WITH CHRIST.

DISCIPLE.

I. I WILL hear what the LORD my
GOD will say within me.

CHRIST.

Blessed is the soul that listeneth to the Voice
of the LORD, and from His Own Lips hear-
eth the word of consolation ! Blessed are the
ears that receive the soft whispers of the Di-
vine Breath, and exclude the noise and tumult
of the world ; yea, truly blessed are they, when
deaf to the voice that soundeth without, they
are attentive only to the Truth teaching with-
in ! Blessed are the eyes that are shut to mate-
rial objects, and open and fixed upon those
that are spiritual ! Blessed are they that exa-
mine

mine the state of the internal man ; and, by continual exercises of repentance and faith, prepare the mind for a more comprehensive knowledge of the truths of Redemption ! Blessed are all, who delight in the Service of GOD ; and who, that they may live purely to Him, disengage their hearts from the cares and pleasures of the world !

DISCIPLE.

2. Consider these transcendent blessings, O my soul ! and perpetually exclude the objects of sensual desire, that thou mayst be able to hear and understand the voice of the LORD thy GOD. Thy Beloved speaketh again.

CHRIST.

I am thy Life, thy Peace, and thy Salvation : keep thyself united to me, and thou shalt find rest. Remove far from thee the transitory enjoyments of earth, and desire and seek after the eternal enjoyments prepared for thee in Heaven : for what are those transitory enjoyments, but delusions and snares ? and what can all creatures avail thee, when thou hast forsaken the CREATOR ? Abandon, therefore, all created things, that, by a faithful and pure adherence, thou mayst be acceptable to Him in whom thou hast thy being, and in union with His Spirit enjoy everlasting felicity.

CHAP-

CHAPTER II.

THAT CHRIST, WHO IS THE TRUTH, SPEAK-
ETH TO THE SOUL, WITHOUT THE SOUND
OF WORDS; THAT HIS INSTRUCTIONS
ARE TO BE HEARD WITH HUMILITY; AND
THAT MANY REGARD THEM NOT.

DISCIPLE.

1. “*SPEAK, LORD, for Thy servant
“ heareth. I am thy servant; give me under-
“ standing, that I may know Thy Testimonies.”*
Incline my heart to the words of Thy Mouth:
“*let Thy Speech distil as the dew!*”

2. The children of Israel once said to Mo-
ses, “*Speak thou with us, and we will hear:*
“*let not GOD speak with us, lest we die.*” I
pray not in this manner: no, LORD, I pray
not so; but, with the prophet Samuel, hum-
bly and ardently intreat, “*Speak, LORD, for*
“*Thy servant heareth.*” Let not Moses speak
to me, nor any of the prophets; but speak
Thou, O LORD GOD, the inspirer and en-
lightener of all the prophets: for Thou alone,
without their intervention, canst perfectly in-
struct me; but, without Thee, they can profit
me nothing. They, indeed, can pronounce
the words, but cannot impart the spirit: they

may entertain the fancy with the charms of eloquence; but, if Thou art silent, they do not inflame the heart. They administer the letter, but Thou openest the sense; they utter the mystery, but Thou revealest its meaning; they publish thy laws, but Thou conferrest the power of obedience; they point out the way to life, but Thou bestowest strength to walk in it; their influence is only external, but Thou instructest and enlightenest the mind; “*they water, but Thou givest the increase;*” their voice soundeth in the ear, but it is Thou that givest understanding to the heart.

3. Let not, therefore, Moses speak: but do Thou, O LORD my GOD, Eternal Truth! speak to my soul; lest, being only outwardly warned, but not inwardly quickened, I die, and be found unfruitful; lest the word heard and not obeyed, known and not loved, professed and not kept, turn to my condemnation. “*Speak,*” therefore, “*LORD, for thy servant heareth; Thou*” only “*hast the words of eternal life!*” O speak, to the comfort of my soul, to the renovation of my heavenly nature, and to the eternal praise and glory of Thy Own Holy Name!

CHRIST.

4. Son, hear my words; words full of heavenly sweetness, infinitely transcending the learning

learning and eloquence of all the philosophers and wise men of this world : “ *The words that I speak, they are Spirit, and they are Life ;*” not to be weighed in the balance of human understanding, nor perverted to the indulgence of vain curiosity ; but to be heard in silence, and received with meek simplicity, and ardent affection.

DISCIPLE.

“ *Blessed is the man, whom Thou instructest,*
 “ O LORD, *and teachest him out of Thy Law ;*
 “ *that thou mayst give him rest from the days*
 “ *of adversity,*” lest he be left desolate upon the earth.

CHRIST.

5. I taught the prophets from the beginning, and even till now cease not to speak unto all ; but many are deaf to my voice : most men listen more attentively to the world, than to GOD ; they more readily submit to the painful tyranny of sensual appetites, than to the mild and sanctifying restraints of GOD’s Holy Will. The world promiseth only impure and transitory joy, and men engage with ardour in its unholy service ; I promise that which is supreme and everlasting, and their hearts are insensible and unmoved. Where is the man that serveth and obeyeth me, with that affection and solicitude, with

which the world and the rulers of it are served and obeyed? Even the sea exclaimeth, “*Be thou ashamed, O Zidon!*” because, for a trifling acquisition of wealth or honour, a tedious and fatiguing journey is chearfully undertaken; but, to obtain Eternal Life, not a foot is lifted from the earth. The sordid gain of perishing riches, engages the pursuit, and employs the industry of all; and the most inconsiderable share of this imaginary property is obstinately and bitterly contested. For the vain expectation of a vainer possession, men dread not the fatigue of sleepless nights and restless days; but, deplorable insensibility! for unchangeable good, for an inestimable recompence, for unfullied glory and endless happiness, the least solicitude and the least labour is thought too dear a purchase.

6. Be ashamed, therefore, O slothful and discontented servant! that the children of the world should, with more ardour, seek after destruction and death, than thou to obtain Eternal Life; that they should rejoice more in vanity, than thou in the Truth. Their hope is, indeed, vain, as that on which it is erected; but the hope that dependeth on my Promises, is never sent empty away: to all that faithfully persevere in my Love, what I have promised I will give, what I have said I will fulfill. “*I am the rewarder of them that diligently seek me: I am he, which searcheth*”

“*searcheth*” and trieth “*the hearts*” of the devout.

7. Write my Words upon thy heart ; ponder them day and night : in the time of trouble, thou wilt find their truth and efficacy ; and what thou now readest and understandest not, the day of temptation will explain. I visit man, both by trials and comforts ; and continually read him two lessons, one to rebuke his selfishness and impurity ; and the other to excite him to the pursuit of holiness. He that hath my Word, and despiseth it, hath that which “*shall judge him in the last day.*”

CHAPTER III.

THE SOUL IMPLORING THE INFLUENCE OF GRACE, IS INSTRUCTED TO WALK BEFORE GOD IN HUMILITY AND TRUTH.

DISCIPLE.

I. O LORD my GOD, Thou art my Supreme and Consummate Good ! and what am I, that I should presume to open my lips before Thee ? I am Thy least and most unprofitable servant ; an abject worm ; much more poor and contemptible, than I dare to express, or am able to conceive ! Yet re-

member me, O LORD, and have mercy upon me; for, without Thee, I have nothing, can do nothing, and am nothing. Thou alone art just, and holy, and good; thy Power is infinite, and the manifestations of it boundless; Thou fillest all things, except the heart of the impenitent sinner, that obstinately rejects the offers of Thy Redeeming Love. Remember, O LORD, the Love that brought me into being; and as Thou madest all things for the communication of Thy Perfections and Blessedness, O fill me with Thyself!

2. How can I sustain the darkness and misery of this fallen life, unless Thy Truth enlighten me, and Thy Strength support me? O turn not Thy face from me, delay not Thy fatherly visitation, suspend not the consolations of Thy Spirit, lest my soul become like a barren and “*thirsty land where no water is!*” LORD, “*teach me to do thy will;*” teach me to walk before Thee in humility and faith, in fear and love! Thou art my Wisdom, who knowest me in Truth, and didst know me before I was born into the world, and before the world was made!

C H R I S T.

3. Son, walk before me in Truth, and in singleness of heart seek me continually. He that walketh before me in Truth, shall be defended against the assaults of evil spirits,
and

and delivered from the delusions and calumnies of wicked men, “*If the Truth make thee free, thou shalt be free indeed;*” and shalt hear, without emotion, the vain commendations and censures of the world.

DISCIPLE.

4. LORD, Thy Word is Truth! As Thou hast spoken, so, I beseech Thee, be it done unto thy servant: let Thy Truth teach, protect, and preserve me to my final redemption; let it deliver me from every evil temper and inordinate desire, so shall I walk before Thee in “*the glorious Liberty of the Children of GOD!*”

CHRIST.

5. I will teach thee what is my “*good and acceptable and perfect will.*” Think on the evil that is in thee, with deep compunction and self-abhorrence; and think on the good, without self-esteem and self-exaltation. In thyself thou art a wretched sinner, bound with the complicated chain of many sensual and malignant passions. Thou art always tending to nothing and vanity; thou soon waverest, art soon subdued, soon disturbed, and easily seduced from the path of holiness and peace. There is in thee no good, which thou canst glory in as thy own; but much
evil,

evil, as the ground of deep shame and self-
abhorrence: thou art even more dark, cor-
rupt, and powerless, than thou art able to
comprehend.

6. Let not, therefore, pride deceive thee
into false notions of the holiness and perfec-
tion of thy life; for thou hast nothing great,
nothing valuable, nothing worthy of admi-
ration and praise, nothing exalted, good, and
desirable, but that which is produced by the
operation of my Spirit. Let Eternal Truth
be all thy comfort and thy boast, and thy
own sinfulness thy displeasure and thy shame.
Fear, abhor, and shun nothing so much, as
the evil tempers of thy fallen nature, and the
evil habits of thy fallen life; which ought
to offend and grieve thee more, than all the
losses and distresses thou canst meet with in
the world.

7. Some men walk not before me in sim-
plicity and purity of heart; but moved by
that curiosity and arrogance which deprived
Angels of heaven, and Adam of paradise,
neglect themselves and their own salvation,
to search into the counsels of Infinite Wisdom,
and fathom the deep things of GOD. These
fall into dangerous errors, and aggravated sins;
and their pride and presumption I continually
resist. But do thou fear the judgments of
GOD, tremble at the wrath of Omnipotence;
and, instead of questioning the proceedings
of

of the Most High, search into the depths of thy own iniquities, that thou mayst know how much evil thou hast done, and how much good thou hast neglected.

8. Some place their religion in books, some in images, and some in the pomp and splendour of external worship: these honour “*me*” “*with their lips, but their heart is far from*” “*me.*” But there are some, that with illuminated understandings discern the glory which man has lost, and with pure affections pant for its recovery: these hear and speak with reluctance of the cares and pleasures of the present life, and even lament the necessity of administering to the wants of animal nature: these hear and understand what the Holy Spirit speaketh in their heart, exhorting them to withdraw their affection from things on earth, and “*set it on things*” “*above;*” to abandon this fallen world, and day and night aspire after reunion with GOD.

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE POWER OF DIVINE LOVE.

DISCIPLE.

1. I BLESS Thee, O Heavenly Father,
the Father of my LORD JESUS CHRIST, that
Thou

Thou hast vouchsafed to remember so poor and helpless a creature ! O Father of mercies, and GOD of all consolation, I give Thee most humble and ardent thanks, that, unworthy as I am of all comfort, Thou hast been pleased to visit my benighted soul with the enlivening beams of Heavenly Light ! Blessing, and praise, and glory, be unto Thee, and Thy Only Begotten Son, and Thy Holy Spirit, the Comforter, for ever and ever !

2. O LORD my GOD, who hast mercifully numbered me among the objects of Thy Redeeming Love, when Thou art pleased to visit me, all that is within me shall rejoice ; for Thou art my Glory and my Joy, my Hope and Refuge in the day of my distress. But because my love is yet feeble, and my holy resolutions imperfect, I have continual need of Thy Strength and Consolation : do Thou, therefore, visit me continually, and instruct me out of Thy Law ; deliver me from malignant passions and sensual desires, that being healed and purified, I may love with more ardour, may suffer with more patience, may persevere with more constancy.

C H R I S T.

3. Love is, indeed, a transcendent excellence, an essential and sovereign good ; it maketh the heavy burthen light, and the rugged path smooth ; it beareth all things without

without feeling their weight, and from every adversity taketh away the sting.

4. The love of JESUS is a noble and generous love, prompting to difficult attempts, and kindling the desire of greater perfection: it continually looketh up to Heaven, and abhors the restraints of its earthly prison: it panteth after its original and native freedom; and, lest its intellectual eye should be darkened by earthly objects, and its will captivated by earthly good, or subdued by earthly evil, sighs for deliverance from this fallen world.

5. Love surpasseth all sweetness, strength, height, depth, and breadth; nothing is more pleasing, nothing more full, nothing more excellent in heaven or in earth: for “*Love is born of GOD;*” and it cannot find rest in created things, but resteth only in Him from whom it is derived.

6. Love is rapid in its motion as the bolt of heaven; it acts with ardour, alacrity, and freedom, and no created power is able to obstruct its course. It giveth all for all, and possesseth all in all; for it possesseth the Supreme Good, from Whom, as from its fountain, all good eternally proceeds. It respecteth no gifts, but transcending all imparted excellence, turneth wholly to the Giver of every perfect gift.

7. Love knoweth no limits, feeleth no burden, considereth no labour: it desireth to do
more

more than, in its present state, it finds itself able to effect; yet it is never restrained by apparent impossibility, but conceiveth that all things are possible, and that all are lawful; it, therefore, attempteth every labour, however difficult, and accomplisheth many, under which the soul that loveth not faints and falls prostrate.

8. Love is watchful, and tho' it slumbereth doth not sleep: it is fatigued, but not exhausted; straitened, but not enslaved; alarmed by danger, but not confounded; and, like a vigorous and active flame, is ever bursting upwards, and securely passeth through all opposition.

9. He that loveth feels the force of this exclamation, "My GOD! my Love! Thou art wholly mine, and I am wholly thine!" and when this is the voice of Love, it reacheth unto Heaven.

DISCIPLE.

10. Expand my heart with Love, that I may feel its transforming power, and may even be dissolved in its holy fire! Let me be possessed by Love, and ravished from myself by fervour and extasy! Let the lover's song be mine, "I will follow my Beloved on high!" Let my soul rejoice exceedingly in Love, and lose itself in Thy Praise! Let me love Thee more than myself; let me love myself only
for

for Thy Sake ; and in Thee love all others, as that perfect law requireth, which is a ray of the Infinite Love that shines in Thee !

CHRIST.

11. Love delights in the communication of good ; and, with a swiftness equal to thought, diffuses its blessings with impartiality and ardour. It is courageous and patient, faithful and prudent, long-suffering and generous, and never seeketh itself ; for that which seeketh itself, falls immediately from Love.

12. Love is circumspect, humble, and equitable ; not soft and effeminate, fickle and vain, but sober, chaste, constant and persevering, peaceful and calm, and free from the influence of sensible objects. It is submissive and obedient to all, mean and contemptible in its own esteem, devout and thankful to GOD, resigned to GOD's Will, and even when His Consolations are suspended, faithfully dependent upon his Mercy ; for, in this fallen life, Love is not exempt from pain.

13. He, therefore, that is not prepared to suffer all things, and, renouncing his own will, to adhere invariably to the Will of his Beloved, is unworthy of the name of Lover. It is essential to that exalted character, to endure the severest labours and the bitterest afflictions, and to let nothing in created nature turn him aside from the Supreme and Infinite Good.

CHAP-

CHAPTER V.

* OF THE TRIAL OF TRUE LOVE.

CHRIST.

1. THOU art yet far distant, my son, from the fortitude and purity of Love: for thou art always seeking after consolation with avidity; and the least opposition to thy immoderate desires, hath power to make thee relinquish thy most holy purposes. But he that hath the fortitude of Love, stands firm in the midst of temptations; and utterly disbelieves and despises the flattering insinuations of the enemy: he knows that I love him; and, whether in prosperity or adversity, makes me his supreme delight. And he that loves with purity, considers not the gift of the lover, but the love of the giver: he values the affection more than the tokens of it; esteems his

* In the common Latin editions, and in all the English translations which I have seen, this and the following chapter are connected, as one entire chapter upon "The trial of true love:" but M. VALART, the editor of the late Paris edition, has printed no more upon that subject than is here given; and has asserted, that one leaf at least is wanting in the old manuscripts, to make this chapter complete.

Beloved

Beloved infinitely beyond the benefits he confers; and, with a noble generosity divesting his mind of all desire of personal advantage, reposes himself not upon my gifts, but upon me.

* * * * *

CHAPTER VI.

THAT THE SOUL MUST NOT
DESPAIR UNDER THE INFIR-
MITIES OF NATURE, AND THE
SUGGESTIONS OF EVIL SPIRITS.

C H R I S T.

† * * * * *

I. Thou must not, therefore, think that all is lost, when the fire of devotion ceases to blaze, and thy heart is not elevated with that sensible fervour which thou art always coveting: for the pleasing rapture thou sometimes feelest, is the immediate effect of present Grace, to give thee a foretaste of the perma-

† The beginning of this chapter is wanting.

M. VALART.

K

nent

ment joys of beatified spirits; upon which thou must not invariably depend, because it cometh and goeth according to the good pleasure of my will. Thy principal concern and business is to struggle against the incidental evil motions of fallen nature, and the evil suggestions of fallen spirits; and if thou dost this with faithful perseverance, thou wilt give true proof of that Christian fortitude which will be distinguished by the crown of victory.

2. Let not, therefore, strange phantasms that possess thee against thy will, of whatever they are born, disturb the quiet of thy soul: maintain only a firm and unchangeable resolution of obedience, and an upright and pure intention towards GOD, and all will be well. Nor art thou to consider thyself as abandoned to the illusions of evil spirits, when being suddenly elevated into holy ecstasy, thou as suddenly fallest into thy accustomed insensibility and dissipation: for this change thou rather sufferest, than contributeest to produce; and while it is involuntary, and thou strivest against it, instead of being a proof of the loss of Grace, it may be made an occasion of humble and acceptable resignation.

3. Know, that it is the continual labour of thy inveterate enemy, to suppress every holy desire in thy soul, and divert thee from every holy exercise; from affectionate meditation
on

on my sufferings, from the imitation of my Life, and the persevering constancy of the saints, from the profitable recollection of thy numerous sins, from the watchful keeping of thy own heart, and from the heaven-born resolution of “*pressing towards the mark, for the prize of thy high calling.*” He disturbs thy thoughts by innumerable vain and sensual images, to create in thee disgust and abhorrence of the restraints of holiness, and to withdraw thee from prayer and the instructions of the oracles of GOD: he is offended and alarmed at an humble and contrite acknowledgment of sin; and, if possible, would bring thee to a total disuse of the Memorials of my Death. Believe him not, nor heed his power, though, to ensnare thy soul, he thus continually spreadeth his deceitful net. When he suggesteth vain thoughts and impure desires, charge all the guilt upon his own head; and say to him, “Get thee behind me, unclean and malignant spirit; and be confounded at the foul whispers of thy unholy breath! Depart from me, most detestable seducer! thou shalt have no part in me: for JESUS, the Bruiser of thy head, is with me; and like a mighty warrior He will protect me from thy malevolence, and thou shalt fall subdued and confounded before Him. I would rather die in extremity of torment, than consent to thy impious will. Hold thy

“ peace, therefore, and be dumb for ever;
“ for I will hearken to thee no longer, nor
“ have any more converse with thee, tho’
“ thou shouldst continually invent new strata-
“ gems to rob me of holiness and peace.
“ *The LORD is my Light, and my Salvation;*
“ *of whom shall I be afraid? Tho’ an host*
“ *should encamp against me, my heart shall not*
“ *fear. The LORD is my Strength, and my*
“ *Redeemer!*”

4. Thus, like a valiant soldier, let nothing abate thy struggle for victory; and if thou sometimes fallest thro’ human frailty, rise immediately with redoubled vigour, depending upon the more abundant succours of my Grace. Only beware of pride and self-complacence; for by these many are betrayed into error, till they are brought to a degree of blindness that is almost incurable. Let the destruction of the proud, vainly presuming upon their own wisdom and their own strength, be to thee a perpetual admonition of the blessings of Humility.

CHAPTER VII.

OF CONCEALING THE GRACE
OF DEVOTION UNDER THE
VEIL OF HUMILITY.

CHRIST.

1. MY son, when the fire of devotion is kindled in thy heart, let not the favour exalt thee into pride: boast not of it to others, as a distinction due to thy superiour merit; nor ponder it in thy own mind with self-approbation and complacence; but rather conceal it; and in a true knowledge and distrust of thy great weakness, be more fearful in consequence of the gift, as bestowed upon one that may make an unworthy use of it. That ardour is not to be relied on, which may soon abate, and give place to coldness.

2. During the enjoyment of heavenly consolation, recollect how poor and miserable thou wert without it. But the advancement of the spiritual life dependeth not upon the enjoyment of consolation; but upon bearing the want of it, with such resignation, humility, and patience, as not to relinquish prayer, or remit any of thy accustomed holy exercises: thou must, therefore, with a willing mind,

and the best exertion of thy ability, perform all thy duties; and not abandon the care of thy improvement, upon pretence of present barrenness and disquietude. There are many, who, when their state of Grace does not correspond with their eager desires and boundless expectations, instantly fall either into impatience or sloth: but “*the way of man is not in himself;*” and it belongeth unto GOD to give comfort when He pleaseth, to whom He pleaseth, and in that degree which is most subservient to the designs of his wisdom and Goodness.

3. Some inconsiderate persons, by an improper use of the grace of devotion, have destroyed all its salutary effects: with an intemperate zeal grounded upon it, they have laid claim to such perfection, as it is impossible to obtain in the present life; not considering their own littleness, but following the tumultuous fire of animal passions, instead of the calm irradiations of Divine Truth. These, by presumption and arrogance, have lost the Grace that was vouchsafed them; and tho’ they had exalted themselves “*as the eagles, and set their nest among the stars,*” yet they have fallen back into the poverty and wretchedness of nature; that being stript of all vain dependence upon themselves, they might learn, that the best efforts of human strength are ineffectual, and that none can soar
to

to Heaven, except I support his flight, and bear him upon my own wings.

4. They that are unexperienced in the spiritual life, will be soon deceived and easily subdued, unless they relinquish the guidance of their own opinions, and hearken to the counsels of tried and successful wisdom: but they who are “*wise in their own conceits,*” have seldom humility enough to submit to the direction of others. An understanding, therefore, that is able only to “*receive*” the truths of “*the Kingdom of GOD*” with the meekness and simplicity of “*a little child,*” is infinitely better than that which, arrogantly glorying in its extent, can comprehend the utmost circle of science: “*better is it to be of an humble spirit*” with the ignorant, “*than to divide the spoils*” of learning “*with the proud.*”

5. That man acteth indiscreetly, who gives himself up to the joy of present riches, forgetful of his former poverty, and divested of that chaste and holy fear of GOD, which makes the heart tenderly apprehensive of losing the Grace it has received. Nor has he attained the fortitude of true wisdom, who, in the day of distress and sadness, suffers his mind to be subdued by despair, and deprived of that absolute confidence in me, which is my right, and his own best support: but those that are most elate and secure in time of peace, are most fearful and dejected in time of war.

6. If thou wert always meek and lowly, and couldst keep thy spirit under the peaceful restraints of holy moderation, thou wouldst not so often incur danger, nor fall into sin. In the hour of spiritual fervour, it is useful to consider how it will be with thee, when those rays of comfort are withdrawn, and the shades of night succeed. And when that awful change takes place, thou must support thyself with the hope, that the light of day, which, for thy instruction and my glory, I have suffered to depart for a season, will break again upon thy soul with new effulgence.

7. The trial of this vicissitude of light and darkness, will contribute more to the perfection of thy spirit, than the gratification of thy own selfish will in the enjoyment of perpetual sunshine: for the safety and blessedness of man's state in this life, are not to be estimated by the number of his visions and consolations; nor by his critical knowledge of Holy Scripture, nor his exaltation to superiour dignity and power; but by his being grounded and established in humility, and filled with Divine Charity; by seeking, in all he doth, the Glory of GOD with purity and integrity; by his knowing and despising himself as nothing and vanity; and by his rejoicing more in contempt and abasement, than in honour and esteem.

DISCIPLE.

DISCIPLE.

8. “ *Shall I take upon me to speak unto my* “ LORD, *who am but dust and ashes?*” If I deem more highly of myself, and arrogate any excellence; behold, Thou standest in judgment against me, and my own iniquities oppose my claim by such a true and forcible testimony as I can neither contradict nor elude. But if I feel and acknowledge the darkness, impurity, and wretchedness of my fallen nature; if I empty my heart of all self-esteem, and become humble as the dust of which I was made; then wilt Thou look upon me with a favourable eye; then Thy Light will illuminate my heart; and then every degree of arrogance and self-esteem, however great, shall be swallowed up, and lost for ever, in the abyss of my own poverty. There Thou shewest me to myself, and teachest me what I am, what I have been, and from whence I came; for I am nothing, and knew it not.

9. When I am left to the disorderly workings of nature and self, behold, I am all weakness and misery! but when Thy Light breaketh upon my soul, my weakness is made strong, and my misery turned into joy. And transcendently wonderful it is, that a creature, which, by its alienation from Thee, is always within the central attraction of selfishness

ishness and sin, should be so suddenly enlightened, purified, and blest, by a participation of the Divine Life! But this astonishing change is the pure effect of Thy Infinite Love, preventing me in all holy desires, succouring me in all necessities, protecting me from imminent dangers, and delivering me from innumerable unknown evils.

10. By the love of myself, I lost myself; but by the love and pursuit of Thee alone, I have both found Thee, and found myself; and this love, the purer it hath been, the more truly hath it shown me my own nihility: for Thou, O most Amiable Saviour, hast been merciful unto me, beyond all that I could either ask, or hope, or conceive.

11. Blessed be Thy Name, O my GOD! that unworthy as I am of the least of all thy mercies, Thou continuest to heap such innumerable benefits upon me. But Thy Love embraceth all, perpetually imparting life and blessing even to the ungrateful, and those that are wandered far from Thee. O turn us back to Thee again, that we may be thankful, humble, and wholly devoted to Thy Will: for Thou art our Wisdom, our Strength, our Righteousness, our Sanctification and Redemption!

CHAPTER VIII.

THAT ALL THINGS ARE TO BE REFERRED TO GOD, AS THE ULTIMATE END; AND THAT THE SERVICE OF GOD IS THE HIGHEST HONOUR, AND THE MOST PERFECT FREEDOM.

CHRIST.

1. IF thou wouldst be truly blest, my son, make me the supreme and ultimate end of all thy thoughts and desires, thy actions and pursuits. This will spiritualize and purify thy affections, which by an evil tendency are too often perverted to thyself and the creatures that surround thee: but if thou seekest thyself in the complacential honours of assumed excellence, or in the enjoyment of any good which thou supposest inherent in the creatures, thou wilt only find both in thyself and them the imbecillity and barrenness of fallen nature. Refer, therefore, all things to me, as the giver of “*every perfect gift*,” the Supreme Good, from whom all excellence in the creatures is derived, and to whom alone the praise of excellence is due.

2. From

2. From me, as from a living fountain, the little and the great, the rich and the poor, draw the water of life; and he that willingly and freely drinks it to my glory, shall receive grace for grace: but he that glories in any thing distinct from me, or delights in any good not referred to me but appropriated as his own, cannot be established in true peace, cannot find rest and enlargement of heart; but must meet with obstruction, disappointment, and anguish, in every desire, and every pursuit. Do not, therefore, arrogate any good thyself, nor ascribe good to any other creature; but render all to me thy GOD, without Whom, not only man, but universal nature, is meer want and wretchedness. I, who have given all, demand it back in grateful acknowledgment, and require of every creature the tribute of humble thanksgiving and continual praise. In the splendour of this truth, all vain-glory vanisheth, as darkness before the sun.

3. When Divine Light and Love have taken possession of thy heart, it will no longer be the prey of envy, hatred, and partial affections; for by Divine Light and Love the darkness and selfishness of fallen nature are totally subdued, and all its faculties restored to their original perfection. If, therefore, thou art truly wise, thou wilt hope only in me, and rejoice only in me, as thy everlasting Life and
Light,

Light, Perfection and Glory: for “*there is but One that is good, and that is GOD;*” who is to be blessed and praised above all, and in all.

DISCIPLE.

4. I will now speak again unto my LORD, and will not be silent; I will say to my King, and my GOD, who sitteth in the highest heaven, “*O how great*” and manifold are the treasures of “*Thy Goodness, which thou hast laid up for them that fear Thee!*” But what art thou, O LORD, to those that love Thee with all their heart? Truly, the exquisite delight derived from that privilege of pure contemplation with which Thou hast invested them, surpasseth the power of every creature to express.

5. How free, and how exalted above all blessing and praise, is that Goodness which Thou hast manifested towards thy poor servant; which not only called him into being, but, when he had wandered far from Thee, by its Redeeming Virtue brought him back to Thee again, and, with the command to love Thee, conferred the power to fulfil it! O source of Everlasting Love! what shall I say concerning Thee? How can I forget Thee, who hast condescended to remember me, pining away and perishing in the poverty of sinful nature, and to restore me to the Divine Life

Life I had lost! Beyond all hope Thou hast shewn mercy to thy servant, and beyond all thought hast made him capable of Thy Friendship, and dignified and blest him with it. Poor and impotent as I am in myself, what can I render Thee for such distinguishing Grace? for it is not given unto all, to renounce this fallen state; and, in abstraction from the cares and pleasures of the world, to follow Thee in “*the narrow path that leadeth unto Life.*”

6. But is it a foundation of boasting, thus to serve Thee, whom all creatures are bound to serve? Instead, therefore, of considering this call from vanity and sin, with self-complacency and approbation, as a superiour distinction from other men; I ought rather to be lost in admiration and praise of Thy Condescending Goodness, which has received so poor and unworthy a creature into Thy Family, and exalted him to the fellowship of Thy faithful and beloved servants.

7. LORD, all that I have, all the ability by which I am made capable of serving Thee, is thine; and Thou, therefore, rather servest me. Behold, the heavens and the earth, which are continually ready to execute Thy Will, are made subservient to the Redemption of fallen man; and what is more, Thy holy “*Angels are ordained ministering spirits,*” “*and sent forth to minister for them who shall*”
“*be*”

“ *be heirs of salvation!*” and, what infinitely transcendeth all, Thou, the GOD of Angels, hast condescended to take upon Thee “ *the form of a servant*” to man, and hast promised to give him Thyself!

8. What returns of love and duty can I make Thee, for these innumerable and astonishing dignities and blessings? O that I were able to serve Thee all the days of my life! that I were able to serve Thee truly, tho’ but for one day! Thou art everlastingly worthy of all service, all honour, and all praise! Thou art my gracious LORD; and I am thy poor vassal, under infinite obligations to serve Thee with all my strength, and perpetually to celebrate thy glorious Name. To do this, is the sole wish and desire of my heart; and whatever ability is wanting in me to accomplish it, do Thou in much mercy supply!

9. What exalted honour, what unfullied glory, to be devoted to Thy Service; and, for thy sake, to despise this fallen life, and all that is at enmity against Thee! What large measures of Grace are poured upon those, who voluntarily subject themselves to Thy most Holy Laws! What ravishing consolations do they receive from Thy Holy Spirit, who, for the love of Thee, renounce the delights of the flesh! What Divine freedom do they enjoy, who, for the glory of Thy Holy Name, leave “ *the broad way*” of the world
“ *that*

“ *that leadeth to destruction;*” and entering in at “ *the strait gate,*” persevere in “ *the narrow way that leadeth unto Life!*”

10. O happy and honourable service, that makes man truly free and truly holy! O blessed privilege of filial adoption, that numbers him with the family of Heaven, makes him equal to the Angels, and renders him terrible to evil spirits, and delightful to all that are sanctified! O service for ever to be desired and embraced; in which alone we can recover the Divine Life we have lost, and enjoy the Supreme and Everlasting Good!

CHAPTER IX.

THAT THE GOOD DESIRES OF THE HEART ARE TO BE CAREFULLY EXAMINED AND REGULATED; AND THE EVIL SUBDUED BY CONTINUAL RESISTANCE.

C H R I S T.

1. SON, there are many things in which thou art not yet sufficiently instructed.

D I S C I P L E.

LORD, shew me what they are, and enable me to understand and to do them.

C H R I S T.

CHRIST.

Thy desires must be wholly referred to me; and, instead of loving thyself, and following thy own partial views, thou must love only my Will, and in resignation and obedience be zealous to fulfil it.

2. When desire burns in thy heart, and urges thee on some pursuit, suspend its influence for a-while, and consider, whether it is kindled by the love of my honour, or thy own personal advantage. If I am the pure principle that gives it birth, thou mayst yield thyself to its impulse without fear; and, whatever I ordain, thou wilt enjoy the event in tranquillity and peace: but if it be self-seeking, hidden under the disguise of zeal for me, behold, this will produce obstruction, disappointment, and distress. Beware, therefore, of trusting to the fervour of any new desire, before thou hast consulted me; lest thou disapprove and repent of that as evil, which thou hast eagerly admitted and ardently indulged as good: and as no desire must be immediately cherished, because it has the appearance of good; so neither must any, because it has not that appearance, be immediately suppressed. Even those desires and pursuits that are known to be good, it is often expedient to moderate and restrain; lest by too much impetuosity thou incur distraction, or by apparent irregularity

L

larity give offence to others, or by unexpected opposition become impatient, and fall from thy holy purpose.

3. But it is always necessary to resist the sensual appetite, and by steady opposition subdue its power; to regard not what the flesh likes or dislikes, but to labour to bring it, whether with or against its will, under subjection to the spirit. And it must be thus opposed, and thus compelled to absolute obedience, till it is ready to obey in all things; and has learned to be content in every condition, to accept of the most ordinary accommodations, and not to murmur at the greatest inconvenience.

DISCIPLE.

4. O LORD my GOD, from Thy Instructions, and my own experience, I learn the absolute necessity of patience: for this fallen state is full of adversity; and whatever care I take to secure peace, my present life is a continual trouble and warfare.

CHRIST.

This, my son, will be the invariable condition of man, till every root of evil is taken from him. But peace, so far from being found in a state that is free from temptation, and undisturbed by adversity, is derived only from the exercise of much tribulation, and the trial
of

of many sufferings. If thou sayest, thou art not able to suffer much here, how wilt thou be able to endure the purifying fire of an hereafter? Of two evils, the least is to be chosen; and to escape the awful punishments of futurity, thou must, for the sake of GOD, bear with equanimity and patience the evils of the present life.

5. Thinkest thou, that the men of this world are exempt from suffering, or have but an inconsiderable portion? Thou wilt not find it thus, tho' thou searchest among the most prosperous and the most luxurious. But thou wilt say, that in the free indulgence of their own will, and the enjoyment of perpetual delight, their hearts are insensible to sorrow. And how long, dost thou think, this uncontrolled licentiousness, and this uninterrupted enjoyment of sensual pleasure, will last? Behold, the mighty, the wise, and the rich, shall vanish like the cloud that is driven by the tempest, and there shall be no remembrance of their honours and delights! Even while they live, the enjoyment of what they have is embittered by the want of what they have not; is either made tasteless by satiety, or disturbed by fear; and that from which they expected to derive pleasure and joy, becomes the source of pain and sorrow: for as this earthly and animal life is the fallen state of the human soul, it is just, that the inordinate desire of its

good should produce distraction and trouble; and that still wandering, and still unsatisfied, it should be its own torment.

6. O how transient and false, how impure and disgraceful, are all these pleasures! And yet, wretched man, intoxicated by perpetual draughts, and blinded by custom, is insensible of the poison he imbibes; and for the momentary delights of an animal and corruptible life, incurs the danger of eternal death!

7. Do thou, therefore, my son, restrain the appetites of the flesh, and turn away from thy own will: “*delight thyself in the LORD, and*” “*He shall give thee the desires of thy heart.*” If thou wouldst truly delight in me, and be plentifully enriched with the Joys of my Spirit, know, that such blessedness depends upon the conquest of the world, and the renunciation of its sordid and transitory pleasures; and the more thou abandonest the desire of creaturely and finite good, the more truly wilt thou enjoy that Infinite Good which dwells in me.

8. But to the enjoyment of Infinite Good, thou canst not attain at once; nor without much patient perseverance, and laborious conflict. Inveterate evil habits will produce an opposition, which can only be overcome by habits of holiness: the flesh will murmur and rebel; and it is only by increasing fervour of spirit that it can be silenced and subdued: the old serpent will deceive and trouble thee,

thee, and tempt thee to revolt; but he must be put to flight by ardent prayer; and his future approaches must be opposed by continual vigilance, and continual employment in some holy exercise, or some innocent and useful labour.

CHAPTER X.

OF MEEK OBEDIENCE, AFTER THE EXAMPLE OF JESUS CHRIST; AND OF THE AWFUL CONSIDERATION OF THE DIVINE JUDGMENTS, AS A MOTIVE TO AN HUMBLE OPINION OF OURSELVES AND OUR STATE IN GRACE.

CHRIST.

I. HE that withdraws himself from obedience, withdraws himself from Grace; and he that seeketh his own fallen life, loseth that Divine Life, which I came to restore. He that doth not freely and voluntarily submit to that superiority, under which my Providence has placed him, demonstrates, that the flesh is not yet overcome, but frequently murmurs and rebels. If, therefore, my son, thou desirest to subdue thy own flesh, learn ready and

cheerful submission to the will of thy superiors: for that outward enemy will be much sooner overcome, if the mind is kept under strict discipline, and not suffered to waste its strength in dissipation and indulgence. There is not a more violent or more dangerous enemy, than thy fleshly nature, when it does not freely consent to the law of the spirit; thou must, therefore, be established in true self-abasement, if thou wouldst prevail against flesh and blood.

2. It is the inordinate love thou still indulgest for thy fallen self, that makes thee abhor submission to the will of others. But is it a great thing for thee, who art dust and nothing, to submit to man for the love of GOD; when I, the Supreme and Almighty, who created all things, submitted to man for the love of thee? I became the least and lowest of all, that human pride might be subdued by my humility. Learn, therefore, to obey, O dust! learn to humble thyself, thou that art but earth and clay, and to bow down beneath the feet of all men! Learn to break the perverse inclinations of thy own will, that with ready compliance thou mayst yield to all demands of obedience, by whomsoever made. With holy indignation against thyself, suppress every intumescence of pride, till it can no longer rise up within thee; and thou art so submissive, so little and worthless
in

in thy own eyes, that men may walk over thee, and as the dust of which thou art made trample thee under foot. What hast thou to complain of, who art vanity itself? What, O base and unworthy sinner, canst thou answer to those who reproach and condemn thee, thou who hast so often offended GOD, and incurred his terrible wrath? But thy life was precious in my sight, and my eye hath spared thee, that thou “*mayest know my Love, which passeth knowledge* ;” and in a perpetual sense of my mercy and thy own unworthiness, devote thyself to unfeigned humility and cheerful submission, and patiently bear the contempt of mankind.

DISCIPLE.

3. Thou breakest the thunder of Thy Judgments over me, O LORD, and my bones are shaken with fear and trembling, and my soul is filled with unutterable dread. I stand astonished, when I consider, that the heavens are not clean in Thy Sight. If thou hast found folly and impurity in Angels, and hast not spared even them, what will become of me? If the stars have “*fallen from heaven*,” “*if Lucifer, son of the morning*,” hath not kept his place; shall I, that am but dust, dare to presume upon my own stability? Many whose holiness had raised them to exalted honour, have been degraded by sin to the lowest

infamy; and those that have fed upon the bread of Angels, I have seen delighted with the husks of swine.

4. There is, therefore, no holiness, if Thou, LORD, withdraw Thy Presence; no wisdom profiteth, if Thy Spirit cease to direct; no strength availeth, without Thy Support; no chastity is safe, without Thy Protection; no watchfulness effectual, when Thy Holy Vigilance is not our guard. For no sooner are we left to ourselves, than the waves of corruption rush upon us, and we sink and perish; but if Thou reach forth Thy Omnipotent Hand, we walk upon the sea and live. In our own nature, we are unsettled as the sand upon the mountain; but in Thee, we have the stability of the Throne of Heaven: we are cold and insensible as darkness and death, but are kindled into light and life by the holy fire of Thy Love.

5. O how abjectly and meanly ought I to think of myself! How worthless and vain should I deem the good that appeareth to be mine! With what profound humility, O LORD, ought I to cast myself into the abyss of Thy Judgments, where I continually find myself to be nothing and nothing! O depth immense! O fathomless and impassable gulph! in which my whole being is absorbed and lost. Where, now, is the lurking-place of human glory, where the confidence of human virtue?

tue? In the awful deep of Thy Judgments which covers me, all self-confidence and self-glory are swallowed up for ever!

6. LORD! what is all flesh in thy sight? Shall the clay glory against Him that formed it? Can that heart be elated by the vain applause of men, that has felt the blessing of submission to the Will of GOD? The whole world hath not power to exalt that, which Truth hath subjected to Himself; nor can the united praise of every tongue move him, whose hope is established in Thee: for those that utter praise, behold they also are nothing, like those that hear it! they shall both pass away and be lost, as the sound of their own words; but “*the Truth of the LORD endureth for ever!*”

CHAPTER XI.

THAT OUR DESIRES MUST BE EXPRESSED IN TERMS OF ABSOLUTE RESIGNATION TO THE DIVINE WILL.

CHRIST.

1. LET this, my son, be the language of all thy requests: “LORD, if it be pleasing to Thee, may this be granted, or that
“ with-

“ withheld. LORD, if this tend to thy Ho-
 “ nour, let it be done in Thy Name. LORD,
 “ if Thou see’st that this is expedient for me,
 “ and will promote my sanctification, then
 “ grant it me, and with it Grace to use it to
 “ Thy Glory : but if Thou knowest it will
 “ prove hurtful, and conduce not to the
 “ health of my soul, remove far from me
 “ my desire.” For every desire that appear-
 eth to man to be right and good, is not born
 from Heaven : and it is difficult always to
 determine truly, whether desire is prompted
 by the good Spirit of GOD, or the evil spirit
 of the enemy, or thy own selfish spirit ; so
 that many have found themselves involved in
 evil, by the suggestions of Satan, or the im-
 pulse of self-love, who thought they were
 under the influence and conduct of THE SPI-
 RIT of GOD.

2. Whatever, therefore, presents itself to
 the mind as good, let it be desired and asked
 in the Fear of GOD, and with profound
 Humility ; but especially, with a total resig-
 nation of thy own will, refer both the desire
 itself and the accomplishment of it to me,
 and say, “ LORD, Thou knowest what is
 “ best ; let this or that be done, according
 “ to Thy Will. Give me what Thou wilt ;
 “ and in what measure, and at what Time
 “ Thou wilt. Do with me as Thou knowest
 “ to be best, as most pleaseth Thee, and will
 “ tend

“tend most to Thy Honour. Place me where
“Thou wilt, and freely dispose of me in all
“things. Lo, I am in Thy Hands; do Thou
“lead and turn me whithersoever Thou
“pleasest: I am Thy servant, prepared for
“all submission and obedience. I desire not
“to live to myself, but to Thee; O grant
“it may be truly and worthily!”

DISCIPLE.

3. Send me Thy Spirit, most merciful Jesus, “*from the throne of Thy Glory,*” that it may be “*present with me, and labour with me,*” and illuminate, sanctify, and bless me for ever! Enable me always to will and desire that, which is most dear and acceptable to Thee: let Thy Will be wholly mine; let it reign so powerfully in me, that it may not be possible for me to oppose it, or to like or dislike any thing but what is pleasing or displeasing in Thy Sight!

4. Enable me to die to the riches and honours, the cares and pleasures, of this fallen world; and in imitation of Thee, and for Thy Sake, to love obscurity, and to bear contempt. But transcending all I can desire, grant that I may rest in Thee, and in Thy Peace possess my soul! Thou art its true Peace, Thou art its only Rest; for, without Thee, it is all darkness, disorder, and disquietude. In this Peace, O LORD, even in
Thee,

Thee, the Supreme and Everlasting Good,
I will “*sleep and take my Rest.*”

CHAPTER XII.

THAT TRUE COMFORT IS TO BE
FOUND ONLY IN GOD.

DISCIPLE.

I. WHATEVER I can desire or conceive as essential to my peace, cannot be the production of this world, and in this world I seek not for it. If all the good of the present life was within my reach, and I had both liberty and capacity for its enjoyment, I know that it is not only changeable and evanescent, but is bounded by the grave. Thy full consolation and perfect delight, therefore, O my soul, are to be found only in GOD, the comfort of the poor, and the exaltation of the humble. Wait a little while, wait with patience and resignation, for the accomplishment of the Divine Promise which cannot fail, and thou shalt enjoy the plenitude of good in Heaven. By the pursuit of earthly and finite good, thou lovest that which is celestial and infinite: use this world, therefore, as “*a pilgrim and a stranger,*”

“*stranger*,” and make only the next the object of desire.

2. It is impossible thou shouldst be satisfied with temporal good, because thou wert not formed for the enjoyment of it; and tho’ all that the creatures comprehend was in thy possession, thou wouldst still be unblest; for it is in the Creator, the Supreme GOD alone, that all blessedness consists: not such as is extolled and sought after by the foolish lovers of the world; but such as the faithful Christian admires and sighs for; such as the spiritual and pure in heart, whose “*conversion is in heaven*,” have sometimes a foretaste of.

3. How vain and transient, is all human comfort! how substantial and permanent, that which is derived from the Spirit of Truth living and ruling in the soul! The regenerate man continually turneth to JESUS, the Comforter within him, and saith, “Be present
“with me, LORD JESUS! in all places, and
“at all times. May I find consolation, in
“being willing to bear the want of all human
“comfort! and if Thy Consolation also be
“withdrawn, let Thy Will and righteous
“probation of me, be to me as the highest
“comfort; for *Thou wilt not always chide,*
“*neither wilt Thou keep thine anger for*
“*ever!*”

CHRIST.

CHRIST.

4. Son, suffer me always to dispose of thee, according to My Will; for that which is most profitable and expedient for thee, is known only to me. Thy thoughts are the thoughts of a man, and partial affections too often pervert thy judgment.

DISCIPLE.

5. LORD, all Thy Words are Truth! Thy Care over me, is infinitely greater than all the care I can take for myself; and his dependence is utterly vain, who casteth not all his care upon Thee.

6. Bring my will, O LORD, into true and unalterable subjection to Thine, and do with me what Thou plearest; for whatever is done by Thee, cannot but be good. If Thou pourest Thy Light upon me, and turnest my night into day, blessed be Thy Name; and if Thou leavest me in darkness, blessed also be Thy Name: If Thou exaltest me with the consolations of Thy Spirit, or humblest me under the afflictions of fallen nature, still may Thy Holy Name be for ever blessed!

CHRIST.

7. This absolute resignation, O my son, must be the prevailing temper of thy spirit, if thou wouldst live in union with me: thou
must

must be as ready to suffer, as to rejoice; as willing to be poor and needy, as to be full and rich.

DISCIPLE.

8. LORD, I will freely suffer for Thy Sake, what ever affliction Thou permittest to come upon me: I will indifferently receive from Thee, sweet and bitter, joy and sorrow, good and evil; and for all that befalleth me, I will thank the Love that prompts the gift, and reverence the Hand that confers it. Keep me only from sin, and I will fear neither death nor hell: cast me not off for ever, nor blot my name out of the Book of Life, and no tribulation shall have power to hurt me.

CHAPTER XIII.

THAT, IN CONFORMITY TO THE EXAMPLE OF CHRIST, THE MISERIES OF THIS FALLEN LIFE ARE TO BE BORNE WITH PATIENCE AND RESIGNATION.

CHRIST.

1. I CAME down from heaven, my son, for thy salvation; and took upon me the miseries of thy sinful nature, not from constraint
but

but Love, that thou mightst learn patience, and bear without murmuring the evils of thy fallen state. From the hour of my birth in the flesh, to the hour of my expiration on the cross, I found no intermission of sorrow: I felt the extreme want of the necessaries of life; I heard the continual murmurings of the world against me, in silence; and bore with meekness its reproach and scorn: my benefits were treated with ingratitude, my miracles with blasphemy, and my heavenly doctrine with misrepresentation and reproof.

DISCIPLE.

2. O LORD! since Thou, in Whom was no sin, hast by a life of patience and obedience fulfilled Thy Father's Will; it is meet that I, a most wretched sinner, should patiently fulfil Thy Will, and bear the evils of my fallen state, till the purposes of Thy Redeeming Love are accomplished.

3. Tho' the present life be in itself a grievous burthen, yet, through the power of Thy Grace, and the influence of Thy Holy Example, and of the saints who have followed Thy Steps, it is made supportable and light even to the weak. It is also enriched with comforts that were not experienced under the law, when the gate of Paradise remained shut, and the way to it was obscured with shadows, and so few desired to seek after the Kingdom

Kingdom of GOD. Nor could even those whom Thou hadst chosen to salvation, and numbered among the just, “*enter into the holiest,*” till, by Thy stupendous Passion and bitter Death, “*a new and living way was consecrated*” for them.

4. O what thankfulness and praise are we bound to render Thee, who hast thus condescended to open for every faithful soul a good and sure Way to Thy Eternal Kingdom! Thy Life, O LORD! is our true Way; and in the exercise of that holy patience which Thy Spirit inspires, we approach nearer to Thee, who art our Righteousness and Crown of Glory. If Thou hadst not shewn us the Path to Life, and led us on by the united aid of Thy Example and Thy Grace, who could have found it, or who would have desired or been able to walk in it? If, blest as we are, not only with the Splendour of Thy Miracles and Precepts, but with the Irradiations of Thy Own Spirit, we are still cold and sluggish, and indisposed to follow Thee; what should we be, if we were left in the darkness of fallen nature?

CHRIST.

5. What hast thou said, my son? In the contemplation of my passion, and of the sufferings of those who have “*followed me in the Regeneration,*” suppress thy complaints:
M “*thou*

“ thou hast not yet resisted unto blood.” What are thy labours compared with those of the saints, who have been so powerfully tempted, so grievously afflicted, so variously tried and exercised? in the remembrance of theirs which were so heavy, thou shouldst forget thy own which are so light. That thou thinkest thy own sufferings not light, is owing to the impatience of self-love: but whether they are light or heavy, thou must endeavour to bear all with patient submission.

6. The more truly thou disposest thyself to suffer, the more wisely dost thou act, and the greater will be thy recompence: by fortitude and habitual suffering, the severest evils are disarmed of their sting. Say not, “ I cannot brook this injury from such a man; “ and the injury itself is what I ought not “ to bear; for he has done me irreparable “ wrong, and reproached me for evil that “ never entered my thoughts. From any “ other person I could have borne it without “ emotion; and there are many things that “ it is fit I should suffer.” These are foolish distinctions, founded only on the nature of the offence, and the relation of the person who commits it; but regard not the virtue of Patience, nor by whom it will finally be crowned.

7. He is not patient, who will suffer but a certain degree of evil, and only from particular persons. The truly patient man considers
not

not by whom his trials come, whether by his superiour, his equal, or his inferiour; whether by the good and holy, or by the impious and the wicked; but whatever be the adversity that befalls him, however often it is renewed, or by whomsoever it is administered, he receives all with thankfulness, as from the Hand of GOD, and esteems it great gain: for there is no suffering, be it ever so small, that is patiently endured for the Sake of GOD, which will not be honoured with his Acceptance and Blessing.

8. If, therefore, thou desirest to obtain victory, make ready for the battle. The crown of patience cannot be received where there has been no suffering; and if thou refusest to suffer, thou refusest to be crowned; but if thou wishest to be crowned, thou must fight manfully, and suffer patiently: without labour, none can obtain rest; and without contending, there can be no conquest.

DISCIPLE.

9. O LORD! make that possible to me by Grace, which I find impossible by nature. Thou knowest, that I can bear but little, and by the lightest adversity am soon overwhelmed. Grant that every tribulation and chastisement may become lovely and desirable to me, for Thy Name's sake! for patiently to suffer affliction for Thee, will heal the disorders of my soul.

CHAPTER XIV.

OF PERSONAL INFIRMITY, AND
THE MISERIES OF THE PRE-
SENT LIFE.

DISCIPLE.

1. “*I WILL confess my transgressions*”
“*unto the LORD,*” and acknowledge my in-
firmity. How small are the afflictions, by
which I am so often cast down, and plunged
in sorrow! I resolve to act with fortitude,
and by the slightest evil am confounded and
distressed. From the most inconsiderable
events, the most grievous temptations rise
against me; and whilst I think myself esta-
blished in security and peace, the smallest
blast, if it be sudden, hath power to bear
me down.

2. Behold, therefore, O LORD! my abject
state, and pity the infirmity which Thou
knowest infinitely better than myself! Have
mercy upon me, that I sink not; that the
deep may not swallow me up for ever! So
apt am I to fall, so weak and irresolute in the
resistance of my passions, that I am continually
driven back in the Path of Life, and covered
with confusion in Thy Sight: and tho’ sin
does

does not obtain the full consent of my will, yet the assaults of it are so frequent, and so violent, that I am even weary of living in perpetual conflict. My corruption and weakness are experimentally known; for the evil thoughts that rush upon me, take an easy possession of my heart, but are with difficulty driven out again.

3. O that Thou, the Most Mighty GOD of Israel, the zealous Lover of faithful souls, wouldst look down with compassion on the labours and sorrows of Thy servant, and perfect and fulfil his desire of Reunion with Thee! Strengthen me with heavenly fortitude, lest the old man, this miserable flesh, which is not yet brought under subjection to the Spirit, should prevail and triumph over me; against him I am bound to struggle, as long as I breathe in this fallen life.

4. Alas! what is this life, which knows no intermission of distress and sorrow! where snares are laid, and enemies rise, both behind and before, on the right-hand and on the left! where, while one tribulation is departing, another cometh on; and before the adversary is withdrawn from one severe conflict, he suddenly sounds a new alarm. And can a life like this, thus embittered with distress, thus filled with corruption, and subject to such a variety of evils, be the object of desire? Can it even deserve the name of life, when it is

continually teeming with plagues and pains that terminate in death? Yet it is still loved and desired; and many place their whole confidence in it, and seek their supreme happiness from it.

5. The world, indeed, is frequently reproached for its deceitfulness and vanity; but while carnal affections govern the heart, it is not easily forsaken. It is both loved and hated by those, who have neither inclination nor power to leave it: "*the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eye, and the pride of life,*" being the offspring of the world, love it as their parent; but as these bring forth pain and misery, they bring forth also in union with them disgust and hatred of the world. But alas! while the soul is devoted to the delights of sin, the love of the world still prevails; and because she is a stranger to the joys of The Spirit, and hath neither tasted nor conceived the transcendent sweetness of Communion with GOD, she still adheres to the world, and notwithstanding her manifold disappointments, still hopes to find pleasures hidden under thorns.

6. Those only, who live to GOD in the continual exercise of faith and love, of patience, humility, resignation, and obedience, obtain the conquest of the world; and enjoy those Divine Comforts, that are promised to every soul that forsakes all to follow CHRIST:
and

and those only truly discern, how grievously the lovers of the world are mistaken; and in how many various ways they are defrauded of happiness, and left destitute and wretched.

* [CHAPTER XV.]

THAT THE SOUL MUST SEEK HER
REPOSE ONLY IN GOD.

DISCIPLE.

1. WITH all endowments of nature, and all gifts of Grace, at all times, and in all places, whether in heaven or on earth, thy repose, O my soul, is to be found only in the Supreme GOD, the everlasting rest and blessedness of the saints!

2. O most lovely, and most loving JESUS! grant me the will and power, above all created being to rest in Thee; above all health and beauty, all glory and honour, all power and dignity, all knowledge and wisdom, all riches and all arts; above all promise and hope, all

* M. VALART has printed this chapter as a continuation of the preceding; but if it is not a distinct chapter, it seems to be more naturally connected with the chapter that follows, and with that it stands united in all the editions prior to M. VALART's.

holy desires and actions, all gifts and graces which Thou Thyself canst bestow, all rapture and transport which the heart is able to receive; above Angels and Archangels, and all the hosts of Heaven; above all that is visible and invisible; and finally above every thing, which Thou, my GOD, art not!

3. For Thou, O LORD GOD! art above all, in all perfection! Thou art most high, most powerful, most sufficient, and most full! Thou art most sweet, and most abundantly comforting! Thou art most lovely, and most loving; most noble, and most glorious! In Thee all Good centers, from eternity to eternity! And, therefore, whatever Thou bestowest on me, that is not Thyself; whatever Thou revealest or promigest, while I am not permitted truly to behold and enjoy Thee; is insufficient to fill the boundless desires of my soul, which, stretching beyond all creatures, and even beyond all Thy Gifts, can only be satisfied in union with Thy All-perfect Spirit.

CHAPTER XV.

THAT GOD ALWAYS HEARETH THE
PRAYER OF THE HUMBLE.

DISCIPLE.

1. DEAREST JESUS, most beloved Spouse of my soul, Supreme Source of Light and Love, and Sovereign Lord of universal nature! O that I had the wings of true liberty, that I might take my flight to Thee, and be at rest! When will it be granted me, in silent and peaceful abstraction from all created being, to “*taste and see how good*” Thou art, O LORD, my GOD! When shall I be wholly absorbed in Thy Fulness? When shall I lose, in the love of Thee, all perception of myself; and have no sense of any being but Thine?

2. Now I groan continually, and bear with pain the burthen of my wretchedness: for innumerable evils spring up in this vale of sin and sorrow, that darken, deceive, and distress my soul; so that I can have no free access to Thee, nor enjoy that ineffable Communion with Thee, which is the privilege and perfection of beatified spirits. O let my sighs move Thee, and the multiplied desolation which I suffer in this fallen life!

3. Holy

3. Holy JESUS, ineffable Splendour of Eternal Glory, sole Comfort of the wandering soul! my heart is lifted up to Thee, and without voice speaketh to Thee in "*groanings that cannot be uttered!*" How long will my LORD delay his Coming? O may He come to me, his forlorn creature, and turn my sorrow into joy! May he reach forth his Omnipotent Hand, and bid the winds that howl about me, be silent; and the sea that threatens to devour me, be calm! "*Come, O LORD*" JESUS, *come quickly!*" In thy absence, no day nor hour is joyful; for Thou art my only Joy, and without Thee my table is empty! I am a wretched prisoner in the darkness of this fallen world, bound with the chains of sin and misery; till Thou revivest me with Thy Presence, restorest me to liberty, and liftest up the light of Thy Reconciled Countenance upon me!

4. Let those that prefer to Thee the gratification of some prevailing desire after the enjoyments of the world, seek that happiness which they can never find; I will pursue no good, present or future, but Thee alone, my GOD, my Hope, and Everlasting Salvation! nor will I cease from my importunity, till Thou turnest back to me again, and I hear Thy Blessed Voice speaking within me.

CHRIST.

CHRIST.

5. Behold, I am here! Behold, I am come to help Thee, because thou hast called upon me “*in sincerity and truth.*” Thy tears, and the desire of thy soul, thy humiliation and contrition, which I never despise, have inclined me and brought me to thee.

DISCIPLE.

6. LORD, I have called upon Thee in my distress, and I desire truly to enjoy Thee, for I am prepared to renounce all things for Thy Sake. It is Thou Who hast given me both the will and the power to seek after Thee: and for ever blessed be Thy Name, O LORD! Who, in the multitude of thy tender mercies, hast shewn this transcendent kindness to Thy fallen creature.

7. What hath Thy servant to say more in Thy Presence, but to beg, that he may humble himself exceedingly before Thee; and be ever mindful of his own darkness, impurity, and malignity. There is none like unto Thee in all the Wonders of heaven and earth; and all that Thou doest, is, like Thyself, supremely good: Thy Judgments are true; and Thy Providence governeth the whole universe, that it may finally partake of Thy Perfection and Blessedness! Praise and glory, therefore,
be

be unto Thee, O Wisdom of the Father, for ever! “*Bless the LORD all his works, in all places of his dominion; bless the LORD, O my soul!*”

CHAPTER XVI.

OF THE THANKFUL REMEMBRANCE OF THE MANIFOLD MERCIES OF GOD.

DISCIPLE.

1. OPEN my heart, O LORD, in Thy Law and teach me to walk in Thy Commandments. Give me understanding to know Thy Will; and to remember, with faithful recollection, and profound reverence, Thy innumerable Benefits, as well general as personal, that I may be always able worthily to praise Thee, and give Thee thanks.

2. I know, indeed, and confess, that of myself I am not able to render Thee due thanks and praise for Thy smallest Benefits: for I am less than the least of all Thy Mercies; and when I attempt to contemplate Thy Excellent Majesty, my spirit fails, unable to sustain the vast idea.

3. All

3. All the faculties of mind and body, all the endowments of nature, and all the advantages of Grace, are the gifts of Thy Hand; and proclaim the Infinite Love and Munificence of the Giver, from Whom all Good eternally proceeds: and tho' one receiveth more, and another less, yet it is all Thine, and without Thee the least portion cannot be enjoyed.

4. He that hath received greater gifts, hath no reason to glory in his own merit, nor to exalt himself above others, nor to insult his poorer brother who hath received less: for he is the greatest and best, who ascribes least to himself, and is most devout and humble in the acknowledgment and praise of that Infinite Liberality from which every good and perfect gift proceeds; he only who esteems himself the vilest, and the most unworthy of receiving the least favours, is best qualified to discern and bless the bounty which confers the greatest.

5. But he that hath received more sparingly, ought not, therefore, to be troubled, nor to murmur at or envy the larger portion of his more wealthy brother! but rather in humble resignation to Thy Will, O GOD, extol that Universal Goodness, which is so abundantly, so freely and voluntarily, and without respect of persons, dispensed to all. Thou art the Inexhaustible Fountain of Good; and for all
that

that flows from it, Thou only art to be praised. Thou knowest what is fit to be given, and what to be withheld; and why one hath more, and another less, it is not in us, but in Thee only to discern, who hast weighed the ability and state of all creatures in Thy Righteous Balance.

6. Therefore, O LORD GOD, I esteem it a signal mercy, that I do not possess many of those qualities and endowments, which in the eyes of men appear glorious, and attract admiration and applause: and he that truly considers his own personal poverty and meanness, so far from being disquieted, grieved, and dejected, should rather derive comfort from this right perception of his fallen state; for Thou, O GOD, hast chosen the poor in spirit, the humble, the self-despised, and the despised of the world, for Thy intimate friends, and the Children of Thy Family. Of this, Thy own Apostles are eminent instances, whom Thou hast appointed to “*sit on twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.*” Yet these passed a life of indignity and opposition, without complaint; and were so humble, so meek, so free from malignant passions and selfish views, that they even rejoiced to “*suffer shame*” and reproach “*for Thy Name;*” and with ardent affection embraced that poverty which the world despises, and with unshaken patience endured those afflictions which the world abhors.

7. No-

7. Nothing, therefore, should give so much joy to the heart of him that truly loveth Thee, and is truly sensible of Thy undeserved Mercies, as the perfect accomplishment of Thy Blessed Will, not only in his temporal, but in his eternal state; in which he should feel so much complacency and acquiescence, as to be abased as willingly as others are exalted; to be as peaceful and contented in the lowest place, as others are in the highest; and as gladly to accept of a state of weakness and meanness that is destitute both of ability and reputation, as others do of the most splendid honours and the most extensive power. The Accomplishment of Thy Will, and the Glory of Thy Name, should transcend all other considerations, and produce more comfort and peace, than all the personal benefits which have been or can possibly be conferred.

CHAPTER XVII.

OF FOUR STEPS THAT LEAD TO
LIBERTY AND PEACE.

CHRIST.

I. I WILL now teach thee, my son, the way to liberty and peace.

DISCIPLE.

DISCIPLE.

Gracious LORD! do what Thou hast condescended to offer. Such instruction I shall rejoice to hear, for such instruction I greatly need.

CHRIST.

Constantly endeavour to do the will of another, rather than thy own:

Constantly prefer a state of want, to a state of abundance:

Constantly chuse the lowest place, and to be inferiour to all: and

Constantly desire and pray, that the Will of GOD may be perfectly accomplished in thee, and concerning thee.

Verily, I say unto thee, he that doeth this, enters into the region of rest and peace.

DISCIPLE.

2. LORD! this short lesson teacheth great perfection; it is expressed in few words, but it is replete with truth and fruitfulness: and if I could faithfully observe it, trouble would not so easily rise up within me; for as often as I find myself disquieted and oppressed, I know I have wandered from the strait path which Thou hast now pointed out. But do Thou, O LORD! who canst do all things, and ever-
more

more lovest the improvement of the soul, increase the power of Thy Grace, that I may be enabled to fulfil Thy Word, and accomplish the Salvation to which Thou hast mercifully called me.

3. “O GOD, be not far from me; O my GOD, make haste for my help!” for a multitude of evil thoughts have risen up within me, and terrible fears afflicting my soul. How shall I pass them unhurt? How shall I break my way thro’ them, and adhere to Thee?

CHRIST.

4. I will go before thee, and humble the lofty spirits that exercise dominion over thee; I will break the doors of thy dark prison, and reveal to thee the secrets of my law.

DISCIPLE.

5. Do, O LORD! what Thou hast graciously promised; lift up the Light of Thy Countenance upon my soul, that every thought which is vain and evil may vanish before it. This is my strength and comfort, to fly to Thee in every tribulation, to confide in Thy Support, to call upon Thee from the lowest depths of my heart, and patiently to wait for the superior Consolations of Thy Spirit.

6. Illuminate me, Most Merciful JESUS! with the splendour of Thy Presence, and cast out all darkness from the secret dwelling of
N my

my heart. Restrain my wandering thoughts that are carried out after evil, and repulse the temptations that so furiously assault my soul. Fight Thou my battles; and with Thy Omnipotent Arm scatter all my enemies, those deceitful lusts, and malignant passions, that are continually at work to betray and destroy me; that in Thy Power I may obtain peace, and my purified soul, as a Living Temple consecrated to Thee, may resound with songs of thankfulness and praise! Rebuke the storms that rise up within me: say to the raging sea, "Be still;" and to the north-wind, "Blow thou not;" and a heavenly calm shall instantly succeed!

7. Send forth Thy Light and Thy Truth, that they may "*move upon*" this barren "*earth*:" I am "*earth, without form, and void*;" a deep covered with darkness, till Thou sayest, "*Let there be light.*" Pour forth Thy Treasures from the Throne of Grace; water my heart with the Dew of Heaven, that the barren soil may produce good fruit worthy to be offered up to Thee. Raise my fallen soul, oppressed with the burthen of sin; draw all my desire after Thee; and give me such a perception of the permanent glories of Heaven, that I may despise and forget the fleeting vanities of earth! O force me from myself! snatch me away from the delusive enjoyment of the creatures, who are unable to appease my restless

less desires! Unite me to Thyself by the indissoluble bonds of Love; for Thou only canst satisfy the Lover, to whom the whole universe, without Thee, is “*vanity and nothing!*”

CHAPTER XVIII.

OF AVOIDING A CURIOUS INSPECTION INTO THE CONDUCT OF OTHERS.

CHRIST.

I. SON, indulge not vain curiosity, nor surrender thy spirit to the dominion of unprofitable cares: “*what is*” this, or “*that to thee?*” *follow thou me.*” What, indeed, to thee, are the words, the actions, and characters, of the idle and the busy, the ignorant and the vain? The burthen of thy own sins is as much as thou canst bear, and thou wilt not be required to answer for the sins of others; why, then, dost thou perplex thyself with their conduct? Behold, I understand the thoughts afar off, and nothing that is done under the sun can escape my notice. I search the personal secrets of every heart, and know what it thinks, what it desires, and to what its intention is principally directed.

All inspection, therefore, and all judgment being referred to me, do thou study only to preserve thyself in true peace, and leave the restless to be as restless as they will: they cannot deceive Omniscience; and whatever evil they have done or said, it will fall upon their own heads.

2. Hunt not after that fleeting shadow, a great name; covet not a numerous acquaintance, nor court the favour and affection of particular persons; for these produce great distraction and darkness of heart. I would freely visit thee with instruction, and reveal my secrets to thee, if, in abstraction from useless cares, thou didst faithfully watch my coming, and keep the door of thy heart open to receive me. Be wise; “*watch and pray* ;” and humble thyself continually, under the sense of thy numerous imperfections and wants.

CHAPTER XIX.

IN WHAT TRUE PEACE OF MIND AND
SPIRITUAL PERFECTION CONSIST.

C H R I S T.

1. SON, I once said to my disciples,
“*Peace I leave with you; my peace I give unto*
“ *you:*

“ you : not as the world giveth, give I unto you.” Peace is what all desire ; but the things that belong to peace, few regard. My peace dwells not but with the humble and the meek, and it is found only in the exercise of much patience. If thou wilt hearken to me, and obey my Voice, thou mayst enjoy a large portion of true peace.

DISCIPLE.

LORD ! what shall I do ?

CHRIST.

2. Keep a strict guard over all thy words and actions ; and let the bent of thy mind be to please me only, and to desire and seek after no good but me : and if, with this, thou refraineſt from cenſuring the words and actions of other men, and doſt not perplex thy ſpirit with buſineſs that is not committed to thy truſt, thou wilt but ſeldom feel trouble, and never feel much.

3. Indeed, to be wholly exempt from trouble, and ſuffer no diſtreſs either of mind or body, belongs not to thy preſent life, in which is much evil ; but is the prerogative of that perfect ſtate, where evil is not known. Think not, therefore, that thou haſt found true peace, when thou happeneſt to feel no burthen of ſin or ſorrow ; that all is well,

when thou meetest with no adversary ; and that perfection is then attained, when thy life regularly corresponds with thy own inclinations. Neither exalt thyself in thy own esteem as the peculiar favourite of Heaven, because thou hast felt the raptures of devotion, and tasted the ineffable sweetness of spiritual fervour : for by these marks, the lover of perfection is not known ; nor doth perfection itself, and man's progress towards it, consist in such exemptions and enjoyments.

DISCIPLE.

In what then, O LORD ?

CHRIST.

4. In offering up himself, with his whole heart, to the Will of GOD ; never seeking his own will either in small or great respects, either in time or in eternity ; but with an equal mind weighing all events in the balance of the sanctuary, and receiving both prosperity and adversity with continual thanksgiving.

5. If thou wert so courageous, so patient and persevering, that when deprived of spiritual comfort, thou couldst prepare thy heart for severer trials, not justifying thyself, and extolling thy own holiness as that
which

which ought to have exempted thee from such sufferings, but justifying me in all my appointments; then wouldst thou walk in the direct path to true peace, and mightst support thy spirit with the sure hope of seeing my face again in unutterable joy. The ground of this high attainment, is an absolute contempt and forgetfulness of self; and when that is established, know, that thou wilt enjoy peace in as full abundance, as it can possibly be enjoyed in this state of exile from thy native heaven!

DISCIPLE.

6. LORD! it is the prerogative of a regenerate man, never to relax in his desire after his first state in Thee; and in the midst of the innumerable cares and dangers that surround him, to pass on without solicitude, not from insensibility, but by a power of liberty peculiar to the mind, that is delivered from inordinate affection to the creatures.

7. I beseech Thee, therefore, O my most merciful GOD! to preserve me from the cares of this fallen life, that my thoughts may not be darkened and perplexed; from the importunate wants and necessities of the body, that I may not be ensnared by the love of sensual pleasure; and from all the impediments of the Regenerate Life, that I may not be subdued, and utterly cast down, by

trouble and despair. I mean not from those things only, which the vain men of this vain world pursue with all the energy of desire; but from those awful miseries, which, as the consequence of the penal sentence of mortality, so encumber and depress the soul of thy servant, that she cannot enter into the Liberty of the Spirit.

8. O my GOD! Benignity and Sweetness inexpressible! turn into bitterness all carnal consolation, which is perpetually drawing my mind from the desire of Eternity, and by the intuitive communication of delight from some good of this present life, alluring me more and more, and binding me faster to herself. Let not, O my GOD! let not flesh and blood subdue me; let not the world, and the transient glory of it, deceive me; let not the devil, and his subtil reasoning, supplant me. Give me courage to resist, patience to suffer, and constancy to persevere! give me, instead of all worldly comfort, the Divine Unction of Thy HOLY SPIRIT; and for all carnal love, pour into my heart the love of Thy Blessed Name!

9. Behold, the care of food and raiment, which it is difficult to separate from vain decoration, and the indulgence of the sensual appetite, is grievous and burthensome to a fervent spirit! Grant me Grace, therefore, to use all things pertaining to the body with
modera-

moderation ; and not anxiously to desire the possession of them, nor bitterly lament the want. To cast all away, the law of nature does not permit ; for nature must be sustained : but to desire superfluity, and that which ministers to delight more than to use, Thy Holy Law forbids, lest the flesh should grow insolent, and rebel against the Spirit. In all these difficult and dangerous paths, let Thy Wisdom and Power govern and direct me, that I may not deviate to the right hand nor to the left !

CHAPTER XX.

THAT SELF-LOVE IS THE CHIEF OBSTRUCTION TO THE ATTAINMENT OF THE SUPREME GOOD.

CHRIST.

I. MY son, thou must give all for all, and make an absolute surrender of self-possession and self-enjoyment. The love of self is more hurtful to the soul, than the united power of the world : for the creatures of the world have no dominion over thee, but in proportion to the affection and desire with which thou adherest to them for thy own sake ; and if thy love was pure and simple, and fixed
only

only upon me, no creature would have power to enslave thee. Covet not that which thou art not permitted to enjoy; retain not the possession of that which will obstruct thee in the pursuit of true good, and rob thee of inward liberty. How wonderful is it, that from the depth of thy heart thou dost not resign thyself, and all thou canst desire and possess, to my Will!

2. Why dost thou pine away in useless sorrow? why is thy strength consumed by superfluous cares? Establish thyself in absolute resignation to my good pleasure, and thou canst suffer no evil. But if, for thy own appropriate good, and the gratification of thy own will, thou desirest change of enjoyment, and seekest change of place, thou wilt always be tormented with anxiety, and made more restless by disappointment; for in all earthly good thou wilt find a mixture of evil to embitter its possession, and in every place meet with some adversary to oppose thy will.

3. It is not, therefore, the acquisition nor the increase of external good, that will help thee to repose and peace; but rather the contempt of it, and rooting the very desire of it out of thy heart: and this is true, not only of the luxury of wealth, but of the pomp of glory, and the enjoyment of empty honour and delusive praise, which suddenly pass away with the fleeting world where they are sought.

4. Neither

4. Neither can change of place avail, if there is wanting that fervent spirit devoted to me, which makes all places alike. Peace sought for abroad, cannot be found; and it will never be found by the heart, that, while it is destitute of me, wants the very foundation upon which alone peace can be established. Thou mayst change thy situation, but canst not mend it: the evils which thou hast fled from, will still be found, and more may soon arise; for thou hast taken with thee, the fruitful root of every evil, thy own unsubdued selfish will.

DISCIPLE.

5. “Uphold me, O God! with Thy Free Spirit; strengthen me with might in the inner man!” that being emptied of all selfish solicitude, I may no longer be the slave of restless and tormenting desires; but with holy indifference may consider all earthly good, of whatever kind, as continually passing away, and my own fallen life as passing with it: for there is nothing permanent under the sun, where “all is vanity and vexation of spirit.”

6. But what wisdom, O LORD! can consider this truly, but That which “was present with Thee, when Thou madest the world; and knew what was acceptable in Thy Sight?” O send me This Wisdom “from the Throne
“ of

“ *of Thy Glory,*” that I may learn to know and seek Thee alone, and thus seeking find Thee ; that I may love Thee, and delight in Thee, above all beings ; and that I may understand all that Thou hast made as it is in itself, and regard its various forms only according to that order, in which Thy Infinite Mind hath disposed them !

7. Grant that I may carefully shun flattery, and patiently bear contradiction ; that neither disturbed by the rude breath of impotent rage, nor captivated by the softness of delusive praise, I may securely pass on in the path of Life, which, by Thy Grace, I have begun to tread.

CHAPTER XXI.

THAT THE PERVERSE JUDGMENTS
AND CRUEL CENSURES OF MEN
ARE NOT TO BE REGARDED.

CHRIST.

1. BE not impatient, my son, when men think evil of thee, and speak that which thou art not willing to hear. Thy own opinion of thyself should be much lower than others can form, because thou art conscious of imperfections

tions which they cannot know. If thy attention and care were confined to the life of the internal man, thou wouldst not feel the influence of fleeting words that dissolve in air. In times of ignorance and wickedness like this, it is most wise to hear reproach in silence, and in full conversion of thy heart to me not to regard the judgment of men.

2. Let not thy peace then depend upon the commendation or censure of ignorant and fallible creatures like thyself, for they can make no alteration in thy real character. True peace, and true glory, are to be found only in me : and he that seeking them in me loves not the praise of men, nor fears their blame, shall enjoy peace in great abundance ; for by such love, and such fear, nothing but disorder and disquietude are produced.

CHAPTER XXII.

OF SUBMISSION TO GOD IN THE
HOUR OF TRIBULATION, AND CON-
FIDENCE IN RETURNING GRACE.

DISCIPLE.

1. BLESSED be Thy Name, O LORD,
for ever, who hast permitted this tribulation
to

to come upon me ! I am not able to fly from it ; but it is necessary for me to fly to Thee, that Thou mayst support me under it, and make it instrumental to my good. I am in deep distress, and my heart faints and sinks under the burthen of its sorrows. Dearest Father, encompassed thus with danger, and oppressed with fear, what shall I say ?—O save me from this hour !—But for this cause came I unto this hour, that after being perfectly humbled, Thou mightst have the glory of my deliverance. “ *Be pleased, O LORD, “ to deliver me !*” Poor and helpless as I am, what can I do, and whither shall I go, without Thee ? O fortify me under this new distress ; be Thou my Strength and my Support ; and whatever be its weight, whatever its continuance, I will not fear !

2. And now, what doth Thy Spirit enable me to say ? LORD, “ *Thy Will be done !*” This tribulation and anguish I must bear as my due : O that I may bear it with patience, till the dark storm be over-past, and light and peace succeed ! Yet Thy Omnipotent Arm, O GOD, my Mercy ! as it hath often done before, can remove even this trial from me ; or so graciously mitigate its severity, that I shall not utterly sink under it : the more difficult it seems to me, the more easy to Thee, is this Change “ *of Thy Right-hand, O MOST “ HIGH !*”

CHRIST.

CHRIST.

3. “ *I am THE LORD, a strong hold in the day of trouble!*” when, therefore, trouble rises up within thee, take sanctuary in me. The support of heavenly consolation comes slow, because thou art slow in the use of prayer; and, before thou turnest the desire and dependence of thy soul to me, hast recourse to every other comfort, and from the world and thyself seekest that relief which neither can bestow. But thy own experience will convince thee, that no profitable counsel, no effectual help, no lasting remedy, is to be found, but in me. When, therefore, I have calmed the violence of the tempest, and restored thy fainting spirit, rise with new strength and confidence in the Light of my Mercy; for I, the LORD, declare, that I am always near, to redeem all fallen nature from its evil, and restore it to its first state, with super-abundant Communications of Life, Light, and Love.

4. Dost thou think, that “ *there is any thing too hard for me?*” or that I am like vain man, who promiseth and performeth not? where, then, and what is thy faith? O believe, and persevere! Possess thy soul in patience, and comfort will follow in its proper season. Wait for me; and, if I come not, wait; for I will at length come, and heal thee.

thee. That which afflicts thee, is a trial for thy good ; and that which terrifies thee, is a false and groundless fear : and what other effect doth thy extreme anxiety about the events of to-morrow produce, than the accumulation of anguish upon anguish ? Remember my words, “ *Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof.*” It is unprofitable and vain, to be dejected or elevated by the anticipation of that which may never come to pass. Such disorders of imagination are, indeed, incident to fallen man : but it is an evidence of a mind that has yet recovered no strength, to be so easily led away by every suggestion of the enemy ; who cares not, whether it is by realities or fictions, that he tempts and betrays thee ; whether it is, by the love of present good, or the fear of future evil, that he destroys thy soul.

5. “ *Let not,*” therefore, “ *thy heart be troubled,*” neither let it be afraid. “ *Believe in me,*” whose Redeeming Power has overcome the world, and place all thy confidence in my mercy. I am often nearest thee, when thou thinkest me at the greatest distance ; and when thou hast given up all as lost in darkness, the Light of Life and Peace is ready to break upon thee. All is not lost, when thy situation happens to be contrary to thy own partial judgment and selfish will. It is sinful in itself, and injurious to thy peace, to determine

mine what will be thy future condition, by arguing from thy present perceptions; to inhere in trouble, whatever be its cause, as if it was thy state of existence; and to suffer thy spirit to be so overwhelmed by it, as if all hope of emerging from it was utterly taken away.

6. Think not thyself, therefore, condemned to total dereliction, when I permit tribulation to come upon thee for a season, or suspend the consolations which thou art always fondly desiring; for this is the narrow way to The Kingdom of Heaven: and it is more expedient for my servants to be exercised with many sufferings, than to enjoy that perpetual rest and delight which they would chuse for themselves. I, who know the hidden thoughts of thy heart, and the depth of the evil that is in it, know, that thy salvation depends upon thy being sometimes left in the full perception of thy own impotence and wretchedness; lest, in the undisturbed prosperity of the spiritual life, thou shouldst exalt thyself for what is not thy own, and take complacence in a vain conceit of perfection to which man of himself cannot attain.

7. The good I bestow, I can both take away, and restore again. When I have bestowed it, it is still mine; and when I resume it, I take not away that which is thine; for there is no good, of which I am not the principle
O and

and centre. When, therefore, I visit thee with adversity, murmur not, neither let thy heart be troubled; for I can soon restore thee to light and peace, and change thy heaviness into joy: but in all my dispensations, acknowledge, that I, The LORD, am righteous, and greatly to be praised.

8. If thou wert wise, and didst behold thyself and thy fallen state, by that Light, with which I, who am The Truth, enlighten thee; instead of grieving and murmuring at the adversities which befall thee, thou wouldst rejoice and give thanks; nay, thou wouldst "*count it all joy,*" that I thus visit thee with affliction, and spare thee not. I once said to the disciples whom I chose to attend my ministry upon earth, "*As the Father hath loved me, so have I loved you:*" and I sent them forth into the world, not to luxury, but to conflict; not to honour, but to contempt; not to amusement, but to labour; not to take repose, but to "*bring forth much fruit with patience.*" My son, remember my words!

CHAPTER XXIII.

THAT THE CREATOR IS TO BE
FOUND IN ABSTRACTION FROM
THE CREATURES.

DISCIPLE.

I. O MY GOD, what a superiour portion of Grace do I still want, to be able continually to turn to Thee without adherence to the creatures; who, while they retain the least possession of my heart, keep me at a tremendous distance from Thee. He truly desired this liberty, who said, “*O that I had wings like a dove, for then would I fly away and be at rest!*” And what can be more at rest, than the heart that in singleness and simplicity regardeth only Thee? what more free, than the soul that hath no earthly desires? To be able, therefore, in peaceful vacancy, and with all the energy of my mind, to contemplate Thee, and know that Thou infinitely transcendest the most perfect of Thy works; it is necessary that I should rise above all created beings, and utterly forsake myself; for while I am bound with the chains of earthly and selfish affections, I find it impossible to turn and adhere to Thee.

CHRIST.

2. Few, my son, attain to the blessed privilege of contemplating The Infinite and Unchangeable Good, because few totally abandon that which is finite and continually perishing. For this a high degree of Grace is necessary, such as will raise the soul from its fallen life, and transport it above itself. And unless man, by this elevation of spirit, is delivered from all adherence to the creatures, and united to GOD, whatever be his knowledge, and whatever his virtue, they are of little value: he must remain in an infant state, groveling upon earth, while he esteems any thing great and good but One alone, The Eternal and Immutable GOD; for whatever is not GOD, is nothing, and should be held as “*less than*” “*vanity and nothing.*” The difference, therefore, between the meek wisdom of an illuminated mind devoted to me, and the pompous wisdom of a critical and classical divine, is as incommensurate, as between the knowledge that “*is from above, and cometh down from*” “*the Father of Light!*,” and that which is laboriously acquired by the efforts of human understanding.

3. Many are solicitous to attain to Contemplation as an exalted state, who take no care to practise that abstraction, which is necessary to qualify them for the enjoyment of it; for
while

while they adhere to the objects of sense, to external services, and the signs of true wisdom instead of the substance, rejecting the mortification of Self as of no value, they adhere to that which principally obstructs the progress to perfection.

DISCIPLE.

4. Alas, LORD! I know not at what our purposes aim, nor by what spirit we are led, we who have assumed the profession and character of spiritual men, that we exert so much labour, and feel so much solicitude, about that which is external and perishing, but scarce ever retire to the sacred solitude of the heart, to know what passes within us. Irresolute and impatient as we are, after a slight recollection, we rush into the world again, unacquainted with the nature and end of the actions which we pretended to examine: we heed not by what our affections are excited, nor in what they terminate; but like those of old, "*when all flesh had corrupted his way,*" an universal deluge overwhelms us, and we are lost in folly, impurity, and darkness. Our inward principle, therefore, being corrupt, it cannot but be, that our actions, which, as the symptoms of the want of spiritual health, flow from it, must be corrupt also; for it is only out of a pure heart, that the Divine fruits of a pure life can be brought forth.

5. We busily inquire what such a man hath done, but not from what principle he did it: we ask whether this or that man be valiant, rich, beautiful, or ingenious; whether he be a profound scholar, an elegant writer, or a fine singer; but how poor in spirit he is, how patient, how meek, how holy and resigned, we disregard as questions of no importance. Nature looks at the outward man, but Grace only at the inward: Nature dependeth wholly upon itself, and always errs; Grace trusts wholly in GOD, and is never deceived.

CHAPTER XXIV.

OF SELF-DENIAL, AND THE RENUNCIATION OF ANIMAL DESIRE.

CHRIST.

I. WITHOUT a total denial of self, my son, thou canst not attain the possession of perfect liberty. All self-lovers and self-seekers are bound in chains of adamant; full of desires, full of cares; restless wanderers in the narrow circle of sensual pleasure, perpetually seeking their own luxurious ease, and not the interests of their Self-denying Crucified SAVIOUR; but often pretending this, and erecting a fabric of hypocrisy that cannot stand; for all that is not of GOD, must perish.

But

But do thou, my son, keep invariably to this short but perfect rule: “Abandon all, and thou shalt possess all; relinquish desire, and thou shalt find rest.” Revolve this again and again in thy mind; and when thou hast transfused it into thy practice, thou wilt understand all things.

DISCIPLE.

2. LORD! this is not the work of a single day, nor an exercise for children; for in this short precept is included the high attainments of “*a perfect man in*” Thee.

CHRIST.

Start not aside, my son, nor be depressed with fear, when thou hearest of the way of the perfect; but rather be excited to walk in it, and, at least, to aspire after it with all the energy of desire. O that self-love was so far subdued in thee, that with pure submission thou couldst adhere to the intimations of my will, as well in the government of thy spirit, as in the disposals of my providence with respect to thy outward situation! thou wouldst then be pleasing and acceptable in my sight, and thy life would pass on in peace and joy. But thou hast still much to abandon, which must be wholly surrendered up to me, before that rest which thou so earnestly seekest can be found. “*I counsel thee,*” therefore, “*to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou*
O 4 “*mayst*

“*mayst be rich;*” Heavenly Wisdom, which trampleth the earth, and its enjoyments, under her feet. Renounce all earthly wisdom, and all complacency both in the world and in thyself.

3. I have told thee, that what is low and vile in human estimation, is to be purchased at the expence of what is exalted and precious: and most vile and contemptible among men, most unworthy of thought and remembrance, is Heavenly Wisdom; that Wisdom, which vaunteth not herself, nor seeketh the applause of men; and which many “*honour with their lips,*” but in their hearts renounce; and yet it is “*the pearl of great price,*” which, while thus despised and rejected by men, must be hidden from them.

CHAPTER XXV.

OF THE INSTABILITY OF THE
HEART; AND OF DIRECTING THE
INTENTION TO GOD ALONE.

CHRIST.

1. TRUST not, my son, to the ardour of a present affection, for it will soon be past, and coldness will succeed. As long as thou livest in this fallen world, thou wilt, even against thy will, be subject to perpetual mutability;

tability ; now joyful, and now sad ; now peaceful, and now disturbed ; at one time ardent in devotion, at another insensible ; to-day diligent, to-morrow slothful ; this hour serious, and the next trifling and vain. But he that hath True Wisdom, and deep experience in the spiritual life, is raised above the fluctuation of this changeable state : he regards not what he feels in himself, nor whence the wind of instability blows ; but studies only, that his mind may be directed to its Supreme and Final Good. And thus, in all the various events of this changeable life, he remains unchanged and unmoved, by directing aright the eye of his intention, and fixing it solely upon me.

2. In most men, this eye of the intention soon waxeth dim ; it is easily diverted by intervening objects of sensual good, and it is seldom free from some natural blemish of self-seeking : thus, those Jews, who went to Bethany, to the house of Martha and Mary ; went, not only to see and hear Jesus, but to gaze upon Lazarus, whom he had just raised from the dead. The eye of the intention, therefore, must be continually purified, till it becomes perfectly single, and, beyond all intermediate objects of pleasure and profit, looks solely unto me.

* * * * *

[Something is wanting here. M. VALART.]

C H A P.

CHAPTER XXVI.

THAT THE SOUL WHICH LOVES GOD,
ENJOYS HIM IN ALL THINGS, AND
ABOVE ALL; AND IN HIM FIND-
ETH PEACE.

DISCIPLE.

1. BEHOLD, Thou art my GOD, and my All! What would I desire more? what higher happiness can I possibly enjoy? O sweet and transporting sounds! but to him only who loveth, "*not the world, neither the things that are in the world,*" but Thee. My GOD, and my All! enough to say, for him that understandeth; and often to say it, delightful to him that loveth!

2. When blest with Thy Presence, all that we are and have is sweet and desirable; but in Thy Absence, it becomes loathsome. Thou calmest the troubled heart, and givest true peace, and holy joy; Thou makest us to think well of all thy dispensations, and to praise Thee in all. Without Thee, the highest advantages cannot please long; for to make them truly grateful, Thy Grace must be present, and they must be seasoned with the seasoning of Thy own Wisdom.

3. What

3. What bitterness becomes not sweet to him, that truly tasteth Thee? and to him by whom Thou art not relished, what sweetness will not be bitter? The wise of this world, and those that delight in the enjoyments of the flesh, are destitute of the Wisdom that enjoyeth Thee; for in the world is found only vanity, and in the flesh death. But they, who, by the contempt of the world, and the mortification of the flesh, truly follow Thee, know, that they are wise in Thy Wisdom; and find themselves translated from vanity to Truth, from the flesh to the Spirit. These alone enjoy GOD; and whatever is found good and delightful in the creature, they refer to the praise and glory of the Creator. Great, however, infinitely great, is the difference between the enjoyment of the Creator as He is in Himself, and as He is discovered in imperfect creatures; of eternity, and of time; of uncreated light, and of light communicated.

4. O Eternal Light, infinitely surpassing all that Thou illuminatest, let thy brightest beams descend upon my heart, and penetrate its inmost recesses! O purify, exhilarate, enlighten, and enliven my spirit, that with all its powers it may adhere to Thee in raptures of triumphant joy! O when will the blessed and desirable moment come, in which Thou wilt satisfy me with Thy Presence, and be in me and to me All in All? for till this is granted me, my joy cannot be full.

5. Wretched

5. Wretched creature that I am! I find the old man still living in me; he is not yet crucified, he is not yet perfectly dead. The flesh still strongly lusteth against the Spirit, still kindles the rage of war, and suffers not "*Thy Kingdom within me*" to be at peace!

6. But do Thou, O GOD! "*who controullest the power of the sea, and stillest the raging of its waves,*" arise, and help me! "*scatter Thou those that delight in war!*" O break them in pieces with thy mighty power! Shew forth, I beseech Thee, the wonders of Thy Greatness, and let Thy Right-hand be glorified! for there is no hope nor refuge for me, but in Thee, O LORD, my GOD!

C H R I S T.

7. As long as thou livest in this world, my son, thou canst not live secure, but wilt always have need of "*the whole armour of GOD.*" Thou art encompassed with enemies, who assault thee behind and before, on the right hand and on the left; and if thou dost not defend thyself on every side with the shield of patience, thou canst not long escape some dangerous wound: if thy heart is not fixed upon me, with a true and unalterable resolution of suffering all things for my sake, thou wilt never be able to sustain the fury of the conflict, nor obtain the palm of victory that distinguishes the saints in bliss. Thou must,

must, therefore, with a lively faith, and a holy resolution of conquering all opposition, pass thro' the various dangers that surround thee; and “*to him that thus overcometh, I will give to eat of the hidden manna,*” while for the slothful and unbelieving is reserved the portion of various misery.

8. If thou seekest rest in this life, how wilt thou attain to the everlasting rest of The Life to come? Thou must prepare thy heart for the exercise of many and great troubles, not for the enjoyment of continual rest: true rest is to be found, not on earth, but in heaven; not in the enjoyment of man, or any other creature, but of GOD. For the love of GOD, therefore, thou must chearfully and patiently endure labour and sorrow, persecution, temptation, and anxiety, poverty and want, pain and sickness, detraction, reproof, humiliation, confusion, correction, and contempt. By these the virtues of “*The New Man in Christ Jesus,*” are exercised and strengthened; these form the ornaments of his celestial crown; and for his momentary labour I will give him eternal rest, and endless glory for transient shame.

9. Dost thou expect to enjoy the consolations of The Spirit, as long as thou pleasest? My saints expected it not, neither did they enjoy it; but with humble resignation endured painful labours, severe temptations, and protracted desertions, confiding not in themselves,

selves, but in me: for they knew, that “*the*
 “*sufferings of the present time were not*
 “*worthy to be compared with the glory that*
 “*should be revealed in them.*” And wouldst
 thou enter into the immediate possession of
 that, which these men, after so many tears,
 and such severe conflicts, scarcely attained?
 “*O wait on the LORD; be of good courage;*
 “*and He shall strengthen thy heart.*” Distrust
 me not, neither depart from me; but con-
 tinually devote both soul and body to my ser-
 vice, and my glory. “*Behold, I come quickly,*
 “*and my reward is with me!*” and till I come,
 my Spirit will be thy Comforter in every
 tribulation.

CHAPTER XXVII.

AGAINST THE FEAR OF MAN.

CHRIST.

1. MY son, fix thy heart steadfastly upon
 the LORD; and while thy own conscience
 bears testimony to thy purity and innocence,
 fear not the judgment of man. It is good
 and blessed to suffer the censure of human
 tongues; nor will the suffering itself be
 grievous to the poor and humble in spirit,
 who confideth not in himself, but in GOD.

2. The

2. The opinions and reports of men are as various as their persons, and are, therefore, entitled to little credit. Besides, it is impossible to please all: and tho' Paul endeavoured to please all men in the LORD, and was "*made all things to all;*" yet, with him, it was "*a very small thing to be judged of man's judgment.*" This faithful servant laboured continually to promote the edification and salvation of men; but their unjust judgments, and cruel censures, he was not able to restrain: he therefore committed his cause to GOD, Who knoweth all things; and sheltered himself against the false suggestions of the deceitful, and the more open reproaches of the licentious, under the guard of patience and humility: yet he sometimes found it expedient to support his character, that he might not give occasion of scandal to the weak, who are too apt from silence to infer guilt.

3. "*Who,*" then, "*art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of a man that shall die, and of the son of man who shall be made as grass, which to-day is, and to-morrow is cast into the oven?*" Fear GOD, Who is "*a consuming fire,*" and thou wilt no longer tremble at the terrors of man. What hurt can man do thee, by his most malignant censures, or his most cruel actions? He injureth himself more than he can injure thee; and whoever he be, he shall not escape the
righteous

righteous judgment of GOD. Set GOD, therefore, continually before thy eyes, and strive not with the injustice of man: and tho' at present thou art overborne by its violence, and sufferest shame which thou hast not deserved; yet suppress thy resentment, and let not impatience obscure the lustre of thy crown. Look up to me in the highest heavens, who am able to deliver thee from all evil, and will render to every one according to his deeds.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

THAT PERFECT FREEDOM CAN
ONLY BE OBTAINED BY A TOTAL
SURRENDER OF SELF-WILL.

CHRIST.

I. “*HE that loseth his life, shall find it.*” For sake thyself, my son, and thou wilt find me. Renounce all self-seeking, all peculiarity of possession, and thou shalt enjoy the true riches. For the moment thou hast made such an absolute surrender of thyself as to leave no ground for resumption, thou wilt be qualified to receive those abundant measures of Grace which I am ever ready to bestow.

DISCIPLE.

DISCIPLE.

2. How often, LORD, must I perform this solemn act of resignation, and in what instances is self to be thus relinquished?

CHRIST.

At all times, my son, as well this hour as the next; and in all interests, not only of thy temporary, but thy everlasting state; I admit no exceptions, but expect to find thee divested of all that can be called thy own: and 'till thou art stripped of self-will, with respect both to thy outward situation, and the state of thy spirit, it is impossible, that thou canst be mine, and I thine. The sooner, therefore, thou makest this surrender of thyself, and the more sincere and pure it is, the more acceptable will it be to me, and the greater, consequently, thy own gain.

3. Many boast of this act of resignation, who perform it with secret reservations; they place not their whole confidence in GOD, but keep back some supports of self-dependence. With others it is at first sincere; but as soon as the storms of temptation beat upon them, they resume the gift they had made; and turning back to themselves, find they are at a vast distance from the path of liberty and peace which they had begun to tread. These cannot possibly attain the freedom of a pure heart,

P

nor

nor enjoy the transporting intercourses of my friendship; for without a total resignation and daily sacrifice of self, the beatifick union cannot be formed.

4. I have said to thee often, and now say to thee again, Forsake thyself, resign thyself, and thou shalt enjoy the plenitude of heavenly peace. Give all for all; seek nothing for thyself, call for nothing back; adhere firmly and unchangeably to me, as the condition of possessing me; and thus thou wilt attain the freedom of a heaven-born spirit, and darkness shall overwhelm thee no more. Let it be thy continual thought, thy living desire, thy unceasing prayer, that stripped of all self-possession and self-enjoyment, thou mayst naked follow thy naked Master; die to thyself, and live eternally to me. Then, the phantoms of vain imagination shall disappear, the tumult of evil passions subside, and the torments of anxiety be felt no more; then immoderate fear, and inordinate love, shall alike be driven from their dwelling in thy heart.

CHAPTER XXIX.

OF SELF-GOVERNMENT IN THE CONCERNS OF THE PRESENT LIFE, AND OF HAVING RECOURSE TO GOD IN ALL ITS DIFFICULTIES AND DANGERS.

CHRIST.

I. ENDEAVOUR, my son, in every place, and in every external employment and action, to be inwardly free, and master of thyself; that the business and events of life, instead of ruling over thy spirit, may be subject to it. Of all thy actions, thou must be, not the servant and slave, but the absolute lord and governour; a free and genuine Israelite, translated into the inheritance and liberty of The Sons of GOD; who stand upon the interests of time, to contemplate the glories of eternity; who cast only a hasty glance on the transitory enjoyments of earth, and keep their eye fixed upon the permanent felicity of Heaven; and who, instead of making temporal objects and interests an ultimate end, render them subservient to some purpose of piety or charity, even as they were ordained by GOD, The Sovereign Mind, Who formed the stupendous fabrick, in which nothing disorderly was left.

2. If thus, in all events, thou suffereſt not thyſelf to be governed by appearances, nor regardeſt what is heard and ſeen with a carnal purpoſe; but in every difficulty and danger enter'eſt immediately into the tabernacle with Moſes, to conſult The LORD; thou ſhalt often receive an answer from the Divine Oracle, and return deeply inſtructed both in things preſent and things to come. And as Moſes always retired to that holy place, for the determination of doubtful and diſputed queſtions; and fled to prayer, for aid in times of danger and wickedneſs; ſo ſhouldeſt thou alſo enter the ſacred temple of thy heart, and, on the ſame occaſions, fervently implore the guidance and ſupport of Divine Wiſdom and Strength. Thou haſt read, that Joſhua and the children of Iſrael, “ *becauſe they aſked* “ *not counſel at the mouth of The LORD,*” were betrayed into a league with the Gibeonites, being deluded by fictitious piety, and giving haſty credit to deceitful words.

CHAPTER XXX.

AGAINST ANXIETY AND IMPETUOSITY IN THE CONCERNS OF THE WORLD.

C H R I S T.

I. COMMIT thy cauſe invariably to me, my ſon, and I will give it a right iſſue in due ſeaſon. Wait patiently the diſpoſals of my Provi-

Providence, and thou shalt find “*all things work together for thy good.*”

DISCIPLE.

LORD, I would most willingly resign my state, present and future, to thy disposal; for my own restless solicitude, and feeble reasoning, serve only to perplex and torment me. O that I took no thought for the events of tomorrow, but could every moment unreservedly offer up all I am to Thy good pleasure!

CHRIST.

2. Man vehemently labours, my son, for the acquisition of that which he desires; but possession defeats enjoyment, and his desire, which is restless and insatiable, is immediately turned to some new object. It is, therefore, of great importance, to suppress desire and forsake self, in the most inconsiderable gratifications.

3. Self-denial is the basis of spiritual perfection; and he that truly denies himself, is arrived at a state of great freedom and safety. The old enemy, however, whose nature is most repugnant to that which is most good, never remits his diligence; but night and day forms the most dangerous ambuscades, if peradventure, in some moment of false security, he may surprise and captivate the unwary soul. I have, therefore, cautioned thee, continually to “*watch and pray, that thou enter not into temptation.*”

CHAPTER XXXI.

THAT, IN MAN, THERE IS NO GOOD;
AND THAT, THEREFORE, HE HAS
NOTHING IN WHICH TO GLORY.

DISCIPLE.

1. “*LORD, what is man, that Thou art
“ mindful of him; and the son of man, that
“ Thou visitest him?*” What, indeed, is he,
and what hath he done, that Thou shouldst
bestow upon him THY HOLY SPIRIT?

What cause have I to complain, O LORD!
when Thou withdrawest thy Presence, and
leavest me to myself; or what can I remon-
strate, when my most importunate requests
are not granted? This only I can truly think
and say: “LORD, I can do nothing, and have
“ nothing; there is no good dwelling in me
“ that I can call my own, but I am poor and
“ destitute in all respects, and always tending
“ to nothing; and if I was not quickened and
“ formed to life and light by THY SPIRIT,
“ I should immediately become dark and in-
“ sensible as death.”

2. “*Thou, O LORD, art always the same,
“ and shalt endure for ever.*” Thou art always
righteous and good; with righteousness and
good-

goodness governing the whole universe, and ordering all its concerns by the counsels of Infinite Wisdom. But I, who in myself am more inclined to evil than to good, never continue in holiness and peace; I am changeable as the events of time that pass over me, and am tossed upon every wave of affliction, and driven by every gust of passion. Yet, LORD, I shall find stability, when Thou reachest forth Thy Helping Hand; for Thou canst so firmly strengthen and support me, that my heart shall no longer change with the various changes of this fallen life, but being wholly turned to Thee, shall in Thee find supreme and everlasting rest.

3. Wherefore, If I could but perfectly abandon all human consolation, either from a purer love and devotion to Thee; or from the pressure of some severe distress, which, when all other dependence was found ineffectual, might compel me to seek after Thee; then might I hope to receive more abundant measures of confirming Grace, and to rejoice in new and inconceivable consolations of Thy HOLY SPIRIT.

4. But thanks be to Thee, O LORD, from Whom all good proceeds, whenever my state is better than I have reason to expect. I am an inconstant and feeble man, and vanity and nothing before Thee. What have I then to glory in? and why do I desire to be esteemed and admired? Is it not, for nothing? and that,

surely, is most vain. Vain-glory is not only the vainest of all vanities, but a direful evil, that draws away the soul from true glory, and robs it of the Grace of Heaven: for while man labours to please himself, he labours to displease Thee; while he fights for the perishing laurels of the world, he loses the unfading crown of Thy Righteousness.

5. True glory and holy joy, are to be found only in Thee; and man should rejoice in Thy Name, not in the splendour of his own imaginary virtues; and delight in no creature, but for Thy Sake. Praised, therefore, be Thy Name, not mine; magnified be Thy Power, not my work! yea, for ever blessed be Thy Holy Name; but, to me, let no praise be given! Thou art my glory, and the joy of my heart! In Thee will I glory, and in Thee rejoice, all the day long; and
“ of myself I will not glory, but in mine infirmities!”

6. Let men *“ seek glory one of another;”* I will seek that *“ glory, which cometh only from Thee,”* my GOD. For all human glory, all temporal honour, all worldly grandeur, is vanity and folly; and vanishes like darkness, before the splendour of Thy Eternal Majesty! O my Truth, my Mercy, my GOD! O HOLY AND BLESSED TRINITY! Fountain of Life, Light, and Love! to Thee alone, be praise, honour, power, and glory ascribed, thro’ the endless ages of eternity! Amen.

CHAP.

CHAPTER XXXII.

OF THE CONTEMPT OF ALL TEMPORAL HONOUR, AND THE RENUNCIATION OF ALL HUMAN COMFORT.

CHRIST.

I. GRIEVE not, my son, when others are honoured and exalted, and thou art despised and debased. Lift up thy heart to me in Heaven, and thou wilt not be disturbed by the contempt of men on earth.

DISCIPLE.

2. LORD, I am surrounded with darkness, and easily betrayed into a vain conceit of my own dignity and importance: but when I behold myself by Thy Light, I know, that no creature has done me wrong; and, therefore, surely, I have no cause to complain of Thee. On the contrary, because I have heinously and repeatedly sinned against Thee, all creatures may justly treat me as an enemy, and make war against me. To me only shame and confusion of face are due; but, to Thee, praise, and honour, and glory. And till I am perfectly

fectly willing to be despised and forsaken of all creatures, as that nothing which in myself I truly am; I know, that my restless spirit cannot possibly be established in peace, nor illuminated by Truth, nor brought into union with Thee.

CHRIST.

3. Son, if thou sufferest even a conformity of sentiments and manners, and the reciprocations of friendship, to render thy peace dependent upon any human being, thou wilt always be unsettled and distressed; but if thou continually seekest after me, the Ever Living and Abiding Truth, as the supreme object of thy faith and love, the loss of a friend will be no affliction, whether it happens by falsehood or by death. The affections of friendship must spring from the love of me; and it is for my sake alone, that any person should be dear in the present life, as there is no goodness in man but what he receives immediately from me. Without me, therefore, friendship has neither worth nor stability; nor can there be any mutual ardours of pure and genuine love, but what I inspire.

4. As far as the distinct improvement and perfection of thy own spirit is concerned, thou shouldst be so mortified to all these personal affections and attachments, as to be able to live sequestered from human converse:
for

for the soul draws near to GOD, only in proportion as it withdraws from all earthly comfort; with so much higher exaltation doth it ascend to Him, as, with deeper conviction of its inherent darkness and impurity, it descends into itself, and becomes viler and more contemptible in its own sight. But he that challengeth and appropriateth any good to himself, bars the entrance to The Grace of GOD; for THE HOLY SPIRIT chuses, for the seat of His influence, a contrite and humble heart.

5. If thou wert brought to a true sense of thy own nihility, and emptied of all selfish and earthly affections, I would, surely, “*come unto thee*” with the treasures of Grace, “*and make my abode with thee:*” but while thou fondly gazest upon and pursuest the creature, thou turnest from the presence and sight of The Creator. Learn, therefore, for the love of The Creator, to subdue this earth-born love of the creature, and thou wilt be qualified to receive The Light of Eternal Truth. It matters not how inconsiderable the object of pursuit is in itself; while it is vehemently loved, and continually regarded, it corrupts the soul, and keeps it at an infinite distance from its Supreme Good.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

OF THE VANITY OF HUMAN
LEARNING.

CHRIST.

1. BE not captivated, my son, by the subtilty and elegance of human compositions; for “*The Kingdom of GOD is not in word, but in power.*” Attend only to the truths of my Word, which enlighten the understanding, and inflame the heart; which excite compunction, and pour forth the balm of true consolation. But read my Word, not for the reputation of critical skill and controversial wisdom, but to learn how to mortify thy evil passions; a knowledge of infinitely more importance, than the solution of all the abstruse questions that have perplexed mens minds, and divided their opinions.

2. When, however, thou hast meekly and diligently read my Word, still thou must have recourse to me as The Only principle of Divine Truth. I am he that teacheth man knowledge, and giveth to the simple that light and understanding which no human instruction can communicate. He who listeneth only to my voice, shall soon become wise,
and

and be renewed in The Spirit of Truth. But, woe be to them, who, instead of turning to me to learn what is my will, devote their time and labour to the vain theories of human speculation! A day will come, when CHRIST, The Teacher of teachers, The Light and Lord of Angels, shall appear, and at his omniscient tribunal hear the lessons which conscience has given to all: and then “*shall*
“ *Jerusalem be searched with candles; the*
“ *hidden things of darkness shall be brought*
“ *to light;*” and the clamorous tongue of reasoning and disputing man shall be silent as the grave!

3. I am he, who exalteth the humble and simple mind, and suddenly imparteth to it such a perception of Eternal Truth, as it could not acquire by a life of laborious study in the schools of men. I teach not, like men, with the clamour of uncertain words, or the confusion of opposite opinions; with vain learning, or the ostentation of learning yet more vain; or with the strife of formal disputation, in which victory is more contended for than Truth: I teach, in still and soft whispers, to relinquish earth, and seek after heaven; to loathe carnal and temporal enjoyments, and sigh for spiritual and eternal; to shun honour, and to bear contempt; to place all hope and dependence upon me, to desire nothing besides me, and above all in Heaven and on earth most ardently to love me.

4. By

4. By an intimate and supreme love of me, some have been wonderfully filled with Divine knowledge, and spoken truths beyond the comprehension of man; and thus, by forsaking themselves, they have found that light, to which the most subtle disquisitions of their own minds could not lead them.

5. To some, I speak only of common truths; to others, of those that are singular and exalted: I make myself known to some, under the more familiar appearance of human forms; and, by a sudden and immediate communication of Divine Light, open the deepest mysteries to others. Tho' my written Word speaks the same language to all, yet without me it does not impart the same instruction: I, as the Internal Principle of Light to Angels and men, am the only Teacher of Divine Truth; I search the heart, and comprehend the most secret thoughts; I am the author and finisher of every good work; and, for the ornament and perfection of my mystical body, I bestow upon the members of it "*a diversity of gifts, dividing to every man severally as I will.*"

CHAPTER XXXIV.
OF DISENGAGEDNESS FROM THE
BUSINESS OF THE WORLD, AND
THE OPINIONS OF MEN.

C H R I S T.

I. IT is expedient for thee, my son, to be ignorant of many things; and to consider thyself as “*crucified to the world, and the world to thee.*” Like one deaf, let what is said pass by thee unnoticed, that thou mayest keep thy thoughts fixed on “*the things that belong unto thy peace.*” It is better to turn away from all that produces perplexity and disturbance, and to leave every one in the enjoyment of his own opinion, than to be held in subjection by contentious arguments. If thou wert truly “*reconciled to God,*” and didst regard only His unerring judgment, thou wouldst easily bear the disgrace of yielding up the victory in the debates of men.

† * * * * *

† Something is wanting here, in the original MS.

M. VALART.

DISCIPLE.

DISCIPLE.

2. O LORD! into what depths of this earthly life must we be fallen, that the loss of what is called its good, should be lamented in the bitterness of sorrow; and the acquisition of it pursued with ardent desire, and unremitted labour; while the injury that in both is done to the immortal spirit, is either not felt, or so soon and so much forgotten, as scarce ever to be recollected more. “*About many things*” that have neither worth nor duration, we are perpetually vigilant and busy; while the “*one thing*” supremely “*needful*,” is neglected and passed by as of no importance. The whole man plunges into the stream of sensual life; and unless Thou awaken in him a sense of danger, and suddenly stop his course, he is borne away with the torrent, and is lost.

* * * * *

One leaf, at least, is wanting here. M. VALART.

CHAP-

CHAPTER XXXV.

OF CREDULITY IN THE PROMISES
AND PROFESSIONS OF MEN.

DISCIPLE.

1. DO Thou, O LORD, “*give me help from trouble; for vain is the help of man!*” How often have I failed of support, where I thought myself sure of it; and how often found it, where I had least reason to expect it! Vain and deceitful, therefore, is all trust in man; but the salvation of the righteous, O LORD, is in Thee! Blessed, therefore, be Thy Holy Name, O LORD, my GOD, in all things that befall us! We are weak and unstable creatures, easily deceived, and suddenly changed.

2. Where is the man, that, by his own most prudent care and watchful circumspection, is always able to avoid the mazes of error and the disorders of sin? But he, O LORD, that puts his whole confidence in Thee, and in singleness of heart seeks Thee alone, will not easily be betrayed into either: and tho’ he chance to fall into some unexpected trouble, and be ever so deeply involved
Q in

in it; yet Thy Merciful Hand will soon deliver him from it, or Thy powerful Consolations support him in it; for Thou wilt not utterly forsake him that putteth his whole trust in Thee. A comforter, that will continue faithful in all the distresses of his friend, is rarely to be found among the children of men: but Thou, LORD, Thou art most faithful at all times, and in all events; and there is none like unto Thee in heaven or earth. O how divinely wise must be that holy soul, who could say, “My heart is firmly established, “for it is rooted in CHRIST.” If this was my state, I should no longer tremble at the threats of wrath, nor be disturbed by the calumnies of envy.

3. Who can foresee future events? who can guard against future evil? If those evils that are foreseen, often hurt us; we cannot but be grievously wounded by those that are unforeseen. But, wretched creature that I am, why did I not provide more wisely for the security of my peace? Why have I given such easy credit to men like myself, who are all destitute both of wisdom and power, tho’ many think us and call us Angels? Whom ought I to have believed? whom, LORD! but Thee, who art The Truth, that can neither deceive, nor be deceived? But “*all men are liars;*” so frail and inconstant, so prone to deceive in the use of words, that hasty credit

credit is never to be given, even to those declarations that wear the appearance of truth.

4. How wisely hast Thou warned us, O LORD, to "*beware of men!*" How justly said, that "*a man's enemies are the men of his own house!*" and how kindly commanded us to withhold belief, when it is said, "*Lo, CHRIST is here; or, lo, he is there!*" I have learnt these truths, not only from Thy Word, but at the expence of peace; and I pray, that they may more increase the caution than manifest the folly of my future conduct.

5. With the most solemn injunctions of secrecy, one says to me, "Be wary, be faithful; and let what I tell thee be securely locked up in thy own breast:" and while I hold my peace, and believe the secret inviolate, this man, unable to keep the silence he had imposed, to the next person he meets betrays both himself and me, and goes his way to repeat the same folly. From such false and imprudent spirits, protect me, O LORD! that I may neither be deceived by their insincerity, nor imitate their practices. Give truth and faithfulness to my lips, and remove far from me a deceitful tongue; that I may not do that to another, which I am unwilling another should do to me.

6. How peaceful and blessed a state must that man enjoy, who takes no notice of the

opinions and actions of others; who does not indiscriminately believe, nor wantonly report, every thing he hears; who, instead of unbosoming himself to all he meets, continually looks up to Thee, the only searcher of the heart; and who is not “*carried about with every wind of doctrine,*” but studies and desires only, that every thing both within him and without him, may be directed and accomplished according to Thy Will!

7. It is of great importance, LORD, for the preservation and improvement of Thy Heavenly Gift, to shun the notice of the world; and, instead of cultivating attainments that attract admiration and applause, to aspire, with continual ardour, after inward purity, and a perfect elevation of the heart to Thee. How often has the growth of holiness been checked, by its being too hastily made known, and too highly commended! And how greatly hath it flourished, in that humble state of silence and obscurity, so desirable in the present life, which is one scene of temptation, one continual warfare!

CHAPTER XXXVI.

OF CONFIDENCE IN THE RIGHT-
OUS JUDGMENT OF GOD, UNDER
THE VARIOUS ACCUSATIONS OF
MEN.

C H R I S T.

I. PLACE all thy hope, my son, in my mercy, and stand firm against the accusations of men: for what are words, but percussions of the air, that are of short continuance, and leave no impression? If thou art guilty, resolve to make the accusation an occasion of amendment; if thou art innocent, resolve to submit to it willingly, and bear it patiently, for my sake. It is, surely, a little matter for thee, who hast not yet endured the lasting pain of cruel stripes, sometimes to bear the light buffetting of transient words. And could so small an affliction make such a deep impression upon thy heart, if thou wert not still carnal, and didst not set too high a value upon the favour and applause of men? Thou art afraid of being despised; and, therefore, canst not bear reprehension, but labourest to conceal thy iniquities, or palliate them by mean
Q 3 excuses.

excuses. But examine now the state of thy heart; and thou must confess, that the world still liveth in thee, and that a vain desire of pleasing men is the governing principle of all thy actions: for whilst thou refusest to be brought to shame and buffeted for thy faults, it is evident, that thou art not yet truly humbled, not yet “*crucified to the world,*” “*nor the world to thee.*”

2. Give ear to my word, and thou wilt not be moved by ten thousand opprobrious words of men. Consider, if every thing was said against thee that the most extravagant malignity can suggest, what hurt could it possibly do thee, if thou only let it pass without resentment, regarding it no more than a mote that floats in the sun-beams? could it even pluck from thy head a single hair? He that liveth not in my presence manifested in his heart, is easily disturbed by the lightest breath of human censure; but he that referreth his cause to me, without the least dependence on his own partial judgment, shall be free from the fear of man. I am the sole judge of man's actions, and the discerners of his most secret thoughts: I know the nature, the cause, and the effect of every injury; and make a just estimate of the wrong that is done by the injurious, and sustained by the sufferer. The word of reproach came forth from me; it was uttered by my permission, “*that the*”
“*thoughts*”

“ *thoughts of many hearts might be revealed:*” for though the innocent and the guilty shall be judged in the face of the whole world at the last day, yet it is my will to try both beforehand, by a secret judgment unknown to all but myself.

3. The testimony of man is fallible, partial, and changeable; my judgment is true, righteous, and permanent, as my own being. In its general comprehension it is hidden to all, and in particular parts known only to a few; yet it never errs, nor can possibly err, tho’ in the sight of fools it seemeth not right. To me, therefore, thou must refer thy cause in all human accusation, and not trust to the blind and partial determinations of thy own mind. The righteous will never be moved by whatever befalls him, for he knows that it comes from the hand of GOD: whether, therefore, he is falsely accused, he will not be cast down; or whether he is justly defended, he will not triumph: for he considereth, that “ *I, The LORD, search the heart, and try the reins;*” that I judge not, as man judgeth, by deceitful appearances; and that, therefore, what is highly esteemed by him, is often abomination in my sight.

DISCIPLE.

4. O LORD GOD, the consciousness of innocence is not sufficient to sustain me under the pressure of false accusation: be Thou,

Q 4

there-

therefore, O most righteous and most merciful Judge, The Omniscient and Almighty, Who knowest all the darkness, impurity, and frailty of man, be Thou my confidence and my strength!

5. Thou knowest what I know not; Thou knowest my secret faults, and how justly I deserve continual reprehension and rebuke: I ought, therefore, whether I think I deserve it or not, to humble myself under every reproof of man, and bear it with meekness. O pardon me, as often as I have not done thus; and mercifully bestow upon me the grace of more perfect submission!

6. It is, surely, much safer for me to depend for deliverance from all my evil, upon the free and boundless mercy manifested in Thy Sacred Humanity; than presuming upon particular instances of imperfect righteousness, to justify myself before men, when there is so much evil in me that escapes the notice of my own mind: and tho' in many instances my conscience condemns me not, yet am I not, therefore, justified; because, without the merciful "*Gift of righteousness*" which is in Thee, no man living "*can be justified in thy sight.*"

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THAT ALL THE AFFLICTIONS OF THE
PRESENT STATE ARE TO BE PATI-
ENTLY ENDURED, FOR THE HOPE
OF ETERNAL LIFE.

CHRIST.

1. MY son, neither let the labours which thou hast voluntarily undertaken for my sake, break thy spirit ; nor the afflictions that come upon thee in the course of my Providence, utterly cast thee down : but make my promise to be with thee and bless thee, thy strength and comfort in every duty, and in all events. I am an abundant recompence, above all comprehension, and all hope. Thou shalt not long labour here, nor groan under the pressure of continual trouble. Wait patiently the accomplishment of my will, and thou shalt see a speedy end of all evil : the hour will quickly come, when labour and sorrow shall cease ; for every thing is inconsiderable and short, that passeth away in the current of time.

2. What thou hast to do, therefore, do with all thy strength. Labour faithfully in my vineyard ; I myself will be thy reward.
Write,

Write, read, sing my praises, bewail thy own sins, keep silence, pray in the spirit, and with patient resolution bear all afflictions; Eternal Life is worthy not only of such watchful diligence, but of the severest conflicts.

3. On a certain day known only to The LORD, the reign of the Prince of Peace will commence; when, instead of the vicissitudes of day and night, joy and sorrow, that are now known, there shall be uninterrupted light, infinite splendour, unchangeable peace, and everlasting rest. Then thou wilt no longer say, “*who shall deliver me from the body of this death?*” nor exclaim, “*woe is me, that my pilgrimage is prolonged!*” for “*death shall be swallowed up in victory,*” and “*the corruptible will have put on incorruption.*” Then “*all tears shall be wiped from thy eyes,*” and all sorrow taken from thy heart; and thou shalt enjoy perpetual delight in the lovely society of Angels, and “*the spirits of the just made perfect.*”

4. O was it possible for thee to behold the unfading brightness of those crowns, which the Blessed wear in Heaven; and with what triumphant glory, they, whom the world once despised, and thought unworthy even of life itself, are now invested; verily, thou wouldst humble thyself to the dust, and rather chuse to be inferiour to all men, than superiour even to one: instead of fighting for the perpetual enjoy-

enjoyment of the pleasures of this life, thou wouldst rejoice in suffering all its afflictions for the sake of GOD; and wouldst count it great gain, to be despised and rejected as nothing among men.

5. If thou hadst a true sense of these astonishing glories, which are offered thee as the object of thy faith and hope, and didst suffer the thought and desire of them to enter into the depths of thy heart, couldst thou dare to utter one complaint of the evil of thy own state? Is any labour too painful to be undertaken, any affliction too severe to be sustained, for Eternal Life? Or is the gain or loss of the kingdom of GOD, an alternative of no importance? Lift up thy thoughts and thy desires, therefore, continually to Heaven. Behold, all who have taken up the cross, and followed me The Captain of their Salvation in resisting and conquering the evil of this fallen state, now rejoice, are now comforted, now secure, now at rest; and shall abide with me for ever in The Kingdom of my Father!

DISCIPLE.

6. O most blessed mansions of the Heavenly Jerusalem! O most effulgent day of Eternity, which night obscureth not, but the Supreme Truth continually enlighteneth! a day of perennial peace and joy, incapable of change or intermission! O that all temporal nature
was

was dissolved, and this day would dawn upon us! It shineth now in the full splendour of perpetual light, to the blessed; but to the poor pilgrims on earth, it appeareth only at a great distance, and “*thro’ a glass darkly.*” The Redeemed Sons of Heaven triumph in the perception of the joys of this Eternal Day, while the banished sons of Eve lament the bitterness and irksomeness of the day of time. The days of this life are, indeed, short and evil, teeming with distress and anguish; in which man is defiled with many sins, agitated with many passions, disquieted with many fears, tortured with many cares, embarrassed with many refinements, deluded with many vanities, encompassed with many errors, worn out with many labours, vexed with temptations, enervated with pleasures, and tormented with want!

7. O when will these various evils be no more? When shall I be delivered from the miserable slavery of sin? When, O LORD, shall I think and speak of Thee alone; when shall I perfectly rejoice in Thee? When shall I regain my native liberty? O when will peace return, and be established; peace from the troubles of the world, and the disorders of sinful passions; an universal peace, incapable of interruption; that “*peace, which passeth all understanding?*” When, O most merciful JESUS! when shall I stand in pure abstraction

abstraction from all inferiour good, to gaze upon Thee, and contemplate the wonders of Redeeming Love? When wilt Thou be to me All in All? O when shall I dwell with Thee in that kingdom, which Thou hast prepared for thy beloved before the foundations of the world? I am left a poor and banished man in the dominions of my enemy, where perpetual war rages, and every evil has its birth.

8. O soften the rigour of my banishment, assuage the violence of my sorrow; for my soul thirsteth after Thee, and all that the world offers for my comfort would but add more weight to the burthen that oppresses me. I long, O LORD, to enjoy Thee truly, but am not able to lay hold of Thee: I would fain rise to a constant adherence to heavenly objects; but the power of earthly objects operating upon my unmortified passions, depresses me, and keeps me down: my mind labours to be superiour to the good and evil of this animal life, but my body constrains it to be subject to them. And thus, “*wretched man that I am,*” while the spirit is always tending to Heaven, and the flesh to earth, my heart is the seat of incessant war, and I am become a burthen to myself!

9. O what do I suffer, when raising my soul to Thee! a crowd of carnal images suddenly rush upon me, and intercept my flight!

“O my

“ O my GOD, be not far from me ! Put not
“ away thy servant in anger. Cast forth thy
“ lightning, and scatter” the illusions of the
enemy ; “ shoot out thine arrows, and destroy”
his power ! Call in my wandering thoughts
and desires, and unite them to Thyself ; efface
the impressions of worldly objects ; give me
power to cast away immediately the imagina-
tions of wickedness ! O Eternal Truth, esta-
blish me in Thyself, that no blast of vanity
may have power to move me ! O Immacu-
late Purity, enter the temple of my heart, and
let all that is unholy be driven from Thy Pre-
sence !

10. In merciful compassion to my great in-
firmity, pardon me, O LORD, whenever, in
prayer, my thoughts have been engaged by
any object but Thyself ! I must confess, that
my distractions are great and frequent ; and
instead of being present where I stand or kneel,
I am carried to various places, just as my rov-
ing thoughts have led me. Where my thoughts
are, there I properly am ; and my thoughts
are chiefly with that which I most love : those
objects too soon recur, which corrupt nature
or sinful habit have made delightful. Upon
this ground it is, that Thou, O Truth, hast
expressly declared, that “ *where the treasure*
“ *is, there will the heart be also.*” And ac-
cordingly I find, in the various revolutions
of my changeable heart, that when I love
Heaven,

Heaven, I take pleasure in meditating on heavenly enjoyments ; when I love the world, I think on its advantages with delight, and with sorrow on its troubles ; when I love the flesh, my imagination wanders through its various pleasures ; when I love the Spirit, my faculties are with holy joy devoted to spiritual exercises : whatever I chiefly love, of that I delight chiefly to hear and speak ; and I carry home with me the diversified images of it, even to my most secret retirement.

II. But blessed is the man, who can calmly dismiss all creatures from the dwelling of his heart, that Thou mayst take possession of it ; who resolutely denies his fallen self, and with a fervent spirit endeavours to exclude all earthly objects, and suppress all earthly affections, that free from distraction, he may continually offer Thee the sacrifice of Pure Prayer, and be made fit to mingle with the choirs of Angels, and celebrate Thy Praise for ever !

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

OF THE DESIRE OF ETERNAL LIFE;
AND THE GREAT BLESSEDNESS THAT
IS PROMISED TO THOSE WHO RE-
SOLUTELY STRIVE TO OBTAIN IT.

CHRIST.

I. MY son, when thou perceivest the heaven-born desire of Eternal Life to be breathed into thee, and longest to be dissolved, that free from the dark covering of the body, thou mayst, without obscurity, contemplate my unchangeable brightness; open thy heart wide, and with all the eagerness of hunger receive this Holy Inspiration. But, without any mixture of complacency and self-admiration, let all thy thanks and praise be faithfully rendered to The Sovereign Goodness, which so mercifully dealeth with thee, so condescendingly visiteth thee, so fervently exciteth thee, and so powerfully raiseth thee up, lest by the propensity of thy own nature thou shouldst be immoveably fixed to the earth: for this new principle of life within thee, is not the production of thy own reasoning, and thy own efforts; but is the pure offspring of Divine Grace, the free gift of Redeeming Love, to
lead

lead thee on to holiness, to fill thee with humility, to sustain thee in all conflicts with sinful nature, and to enable thee to adhere to me with all thy heart, and serve me with fervent duty and the absolute surrender of thy own will.

2. The fire of devotion is often ardent, my son; but the flame ascends not without smoke: thus, the desires of many, while they burn for the enjoyment of Heaven, are sullied with the dark vapours of carnal affection; and that which is so earnestly sought from GOD, is not sought wholly and purely for His Honour: and such is thy desire, however restless and importunate; for that cannot be pure, which is mixed with self-interest. Make not, therefore, thy own delight and advantage, but my will and my honour, the ground and measure of all thy requests; for if thou judgest according to Truth, thou wilt cheerfully submit to my appointment, and always prefer the accomplishment of my will to the gratification of thy own desire.

3. I know thy desire, and thy groaning is not hid from me. Thou wouldst this moment be admitted into the glorious liberty of The Sons of GOD; thou longest for the immediate possession of the celestial mansions, and the unfading pleasures of the Heavenly Canaan: but thy hour is not yet come; a far different time must first take place, a time of

R

proba-

probation, labour, and contest. Thou wishest now to be filled with The Sovereign Good; but thou art not yet capable of enjoying it: I am that Sovereign Good; wait patiently for me, till the Kingdom of GOD cometh.

4. Thou must still be proved upon earth, and exercised with various troubles. Some measures of consolation shall be imparted, to animate and sustain thee in thy conflicts; but the plenitude of peace and joy is reserved for the future world. “*Be strong,*” therefore, “*and of good courage,*” as well in doing as in suffering that which is repugnant to fallen nature; for thou must now “*put on the New Man,*” with new perceptions, will, and desires.

5. While this important change is making, thou wilt often be obliged to relinquish thy own will, and do that which thou dislikest, and forbear that which thou choosest: and wilt also often find, that the designs of others will succeed, and thy own prove abortive; that what others say shall be listened to with eager attention, but what thou sayest shall either not be heard, or rejected with disdain; that others shall ask once, and receive; thou shalt ask often, and not obtain; that the tongue of fame shall speak long and loud of the accomplishments of others, and be utterly silent of thine; and that others shall be advanced to stations of wealth and honour, while
thou

thou art passed by as unworthy of trust, and incapable of service.

6. At such trials, nature will be greatly offended and grieved; and it will require a severe struggle to suppress resentment: yet much benefit will be derived from a meek and silent submission; for it is by such trials, that the servant of THE LORD proves his fidelity in denying himself, and subduing his corrupt appetites and passions. The difficulty of destroying Self is greatest, when thou sufferest a course of events, and beholdest a scene of human transactions, wholly contrary to thy own will; especially, when that which thou art required to concur with or execute, seems either ill-timed, or of small importance. As thou art placed in a state of subordination, thou dardest not resist the ruling power; but thou findest it painful perpetually to follow the beck of another, and either relinquish thy own sentiments, or act contrary to them.

7. But consider, my son, the speedy end of all these trials, and the everlasting peace and blessedness that will succeed; they will then, so far from being occasions of disquietude and distress, furnish the most comfortable encouragements to persevering patience. In exchange for that small portion of corrupt and selfish will, which thou hast freely forsaken in this world, thou shalt always have thy will in Heaven: there, whatever thou

willest, thou shalt find; and whatever thou desirest, thou shalt possess: there thou shalt enjoy all good, without the fear of losing any part: there thy will being always the same with mine, shall desire nothing private and personal, nothing out of me, nothing but what I myself desire: there thou shalt meet with no resistance, no accusation, no contradiction, no obstruction; but all good shall be present at once, to satisfy the largest wishes of thy heart: there, for transient shame patiently endured, I will give immortal honour; “*the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness* ;” and for the lowermost seat, an everlasting throne: there the fruits of obedience shall flourish, the labour of penitence rejoice, and the chearfulness of humble subjection receive a crown of glory. Now, therefore, bow thyself willingly under the power of every human being: nor regard who it is that hath commanded this or that; but let it be thy only care, to take all in good part, and to execute with a willing mind whatever is enjoined or requested, whether by thy superior, thy inferior, or thy equal.

8. Let one man seek after this gratification, and another after that; let this man glory in one imaginary excellence, and that in another, and let their self-applause be seconded by the praises of a thousand tongues; but do thou, my son, glory only in my name, and
rejoice

rejoice only in the contempt of thyself, and the accomplishment of my will: let it be all thy wish, that, whether in life or death, GOD may be always glorified in thee!

* CHAPTER XXXVIII.

OF THE RESIGNATION OF A DESOLATE SPIRIT TO THE WILL OF GOD.

DISCIPLE.

I. O LORD GOD, Holy Father, be Thou blessed now and for ever! for whatever Thou willest, is done; and all that Thou willest, is good. Let thy servant rejoice, not in himself, nor in any other creature, but in Thee; for Thou only art the object of true joy: Thou, O LORD, art my hope and exultation, my righteousness and crown of glory! What good doth thy servant possess, which he hath not received from thee, as the free and unmerited gift of Redeeming Love? all is thine, whatever has been done for me, or given to me. *I am poor and afflicted from my youth up:* and sometimes my soul is for-

* M. VALART has printed this chapter as a continuation of the preceding.

rowful, even unto death ; and sometimes is filled with consternation and terrour, at the evils that threaten to overwhelm me.

2. I long, indeed, O LORD, for the blessings of peace ; I earnestly implore the peace of Thy Children, who are sustained by Thee in the light of Thy Countenance. Shouldst Thou bestow peace ; shouldst Thou pour forth the treasures of Heavenly Joy ; the soul of thy servant shall be tuned to harmony, and devoutly celebrate Thy Praise. But if Thou still withholdest Thy Enlivening Presence, as Thou art often pleased to do, he cannot “ *run the way of thy commandments ;*” but must smite his bosom in the dust, because it is not with him as it was yesterday and the day before, “ *when Thy Lamp shone upon his head,*” and “ *under the shadow of Thy Wings*” he was hidden and protected from evil.

3. O Righteous Father, ever to be praised, the hour of Thy servant’s trial is at hand ! O Merciful Father, ever to be loved, it is meet that, in this hour, Thy servant should suffer something for Thy Sake ! O Father, infinitely wise, and ever to be adored, that hour is now come, which Thou didst foreknow from all eternity, in which Thy servant shall be oppressed and enfeebled in his outward man, that his inward man may live to Thee for ever ! And it is necessary he should be disgraced, humbled, and brought to nothing,
in

in the fight of men ; should be broken with sufferings, and worn down with infirmities ; that he may be qualified to rise again in the splendour of the New and Everlasting Day, and be glorified with Thee in Heaven ! Holy Father, so Thou hast willed, and so Thou hast ordained ; and that is come to pass which Thou thyself didst appoint !

4. It is Thy peculiar favour to him whom Thou hast condescended to choose for Thy Friend, to let him suffer in this world in testimony of his fidelity and love : and be the affliction ever so great, and however often and by whatever hand it is administered, it comes not but from the counsels of Thy Infinite Wisdom, and it is under the direction of Thy Merciful Providence ; for without Thee, nothing is done upon the face of the earth. “ *It is,*” therefore, “ *good for me, O LORD,*” “ *that I should be afflicted, that I may learn*” “ *thy statutes,*” and utterly cast from me all self-confidence and self-exaltation. It is good for me, that “ *shame should cover my face ;*” that in seeking comfort, I may have recourse, not to men, but to Thee ; and that I may also learn to adore in silence Thy unsearchable judgments, who afflictest the just together with the unjust, and both in righteousness and truth.

5. I give Thee thanks, O Father of Mercies ! that Thou hast not spared the evil that

is in me ; but hast humbled sinful nature by severe chastisements, inflicting pains, and accumulating sorrows, both from within and from without : and of all in Heaven and on earth, there is none that can bring me comfort, but Thou, O LORD my GOD, the sovereign physician of diseased souls ; “ *Who* “ *woundest and healest, Who bringest down to* “ *the grave, and raisest up again !*” Thy chastisement is upon me, and Thy rod shall teach me wisdom !

6. Behold, dearest Father, I am in Thy hands, and bow myself under the rod of Thy correction ! O smite my back, and bend my stubborn neck, till my untractable spirit shall learn ready compliance with Thy Righteous Will ! Make me Thy holy and humble disciple, as Thou hast often done others, that I may chearfully obey every intimation of Thy Good Pleasure ! To Thy merciful discipline I now commend all that I am, and bless Thee that Thou hast not reserved me for the awful chastisements of the future world. Thou knowest the whole extent of being, and all its parts ; and no thought or desire passeth in the heart of man, that is hidden from Thy Sight : from all eternity, Thou knowest the events of time ; Thou knowest what is most expedient for my advancement in holiness, and how effectually tribulation contributeth to wear away the rust of
of

of corruption. Do with me, therefore, O LORD, according to Thy Own Will; only despise me not for my sinful life, which Thou alone perfectly understandest, and Thou alone canst effectually change.

7. Grant, O LORD, that, from this hour, I may know only that, which is worthy to be known; that I may love only that, which is truly lovely; that I may praise only that, which chiefly pleaseth Thee; and that I may esteem what Thou esteamest, and despise that which is contemptible in Thy Sight! Suffer me no longer to judge by the imperfect perception either of my own senses, or the senses of men ignorant like myself; but enable me to judge both of visible and invisible things, by The Spirit of Truth; and, above all, to know and to obey Thy Will: for those who form their judgment only upon what they hear and see, are often mistaken; and the lovers of the world also err and are deceived, through their continual adherence to the objects of sense. How great an instance of this fallibility of judgment, is the glory that is given and received among men! for none is made great by the voice of human praise. When men extol each other, the cheat imposes upon the cheat, the vain flatters the vain, the blind leads the blind, the weak supports the weak; and such commendation produces not honour, but shame: for, as it
is

is said by that holy servant, St. Francis,
 “ Such as every man is in Thy Sight, O
 “ LORD, such, and no greater, is he in
 “ himself!”

CHAPTER XXXIX.

THAT WHEN WE FIND OURSELVES
 INCAPABLE OF THE HIGHER EXER-
 CISES OF DEVOTION, WE SHOULD
 WITH HUMILITY PRACTISE THE
 LOWER; AND ACCOUNT OUR-
 SELVES RATHER WORTHY OF AF-
 FLICTION THAN COMFORT.

CHRIST.

I. IT is not possible for thee, my son, to
 continue in the uninterrupted enjoyment of
 spiritual fervour, nor always to stand upon the
 heights of pure contemplation; but, through
 the influence of that evil nature into which
 thou art fallen, thou must sometimes feel thy
 poverty and weakness, and, tho' with weariness
 and regret, be compelled to drag the bur-
 then of thy corruptible life. As long as thou
 art united to an earthly body, thy days will
 often be full of heaviness, and thy heart of
 sorrow; and unable to escape from thy prison
 of

of flesh and blood, thou must still feel the severity of its restraints, and groan under the power of those carnal appetites that interrupt the exercises of The Spirit, and of those dark passions that intercept thy views of Heaven.

2. In such seasons of weakness and sorrow, it is necessary for thee to take refuge in external exercises, and seek relief from the diligent practice of common duties; with assured confidence expecting my return, and with meek patience bearing this state of banishment to darkness and desolation, till I visit thee again, and deliver thee from all thy distress: for I will then make thee forget thy past sufferings, in the enjoyment of profound peace; I will so fully open to thy mind the Divine Truths contained in my written word, that with “*an enlarged heart*” thou shalt begin to “*run the way of my commandments*;” and in the joyful anticipation of the Heavenly Life, thou shalt feel and confess, that “*the sufferings of the present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in thee.*”

DISCIPLE.

3. LORD, I am unworthy, not only of the superiour comforts, but of the least visitations of Thy Spirit; and, therefore, Thou dealest righteously with me, whenever Thou leavest me to the poverty and wretchedness of my fallen

fallen life. Tho', from the anguish of my soul, "*rivers of tears*" were to "*flow day and night*;" still Thou wouldst deal righteously with me, if Thou shouldst withdraw Thy consolations: for I am worthy only of stripes and afflictions, because I have frequently and obstinately resisted Thy will, and in many things have heinously offended. From a faithful retrospection on my past life, I cannot plead the least title to Thy smallest favours. But "*Thou, O LORD, Who art a GOD full of compassion, and plenteous in mercy,*" and "*not willing that any*" of Thy creatures "*should perish,*" to make known the riches of Thy goodness in the vessels of mercy, notwithstanding the unworthiness of Thy servant, hast often vouchsafed to comfort him beyond all human measure or conception; for Thy consolations infinitely surpass the consolations of men.

4. What, indeed, am I, O LORD! and what have I done, that Thou shouldst bestow upon me any consolation? So far from being able to recollect the least goodness proceeding from myself, I have been always prone to evil, and insensible and sluggish under the sanctifying influences of Thy Grace. Should I say otherwise, Thou wouldst stand in judgment against me, and there is none that would be able to support my cause. My sins are, indeed, so numerous and aggravated, that they
have

have even exposed me to everlasting wrath; much more have they rendered me unworthy of the society of Thy faithful servants, from which I ought to be driven as an object of universal scorn and contempt. Painful as it is to pride, thus to plead my iniquities against myself, yet truth compels me to it, and I can only implore forgiveness from Thy Infinite Mercy.

5. But oppressed with guilt, and filled with confusion as I am, what shall I say? I have no power to utter more than this—I have sinned, O LORD, “*against Thee only I have sinned. Have mercy upon me, according to Thy Loving-Kindness; and according to the multitude of Thy Tender Mercies, blot out all my transgressions.*” Bear with me a little while, that I may truly bewail my corruption and misery, “*before I go to the land of darkness,*” that is covered with the shadow of death. And from a sinner, laden with such aggravated guilt, what other reparation dost Thou desire for his transgressions, and what other is he capable of, but a heart broken with holy sorrow, and humbled to the dust?

6. In true contrition and humiliation, the hope of pardon hath its birth: there the troubled conscience is set at rest; the Grace that was lost, is found again; man is delivered from the wrath to come; and GOD and the penitent soul meet together with a holy kiss. The
humble

humble sorrow of a broken and a contrite heart is thy chosen sacrifice, O LORD! infinitely more fragrant than clouds of burning incense: it is the precious ointment, with which thou desirest to have Thy holy feet anointed. A broken and a contrite heart, Thou never didst, nor ever wilt despise: that is the place of refuge from the wrath of the enemy; and there all impurity both of the flesh and of the spirit, is cleansed and washed away.

CHAPTER XL.

THAT THE GRACE OF GOD DWELLS
NOT WITH THOSE THAT LOVE
THE WORLD.

CHRIST.

1. SON, my Grace, which is infinitely pure, like the fountain from whence it flows, cannot unite with the love of sensual pleasure, and the enjoyment of the world. If, therefore, thou desirest to receive this heavenly gift, thou must banish from thy heart every affection that obstructs its entrance.

2. Chuse a place of undisturbed privacy for thy resort; delight in retirement and solitude; and, instead of wasting thy invaluable moments

ments in the vain and unprofitable conversations of men, devote them to prayer and holy intercourse with GOD, which will increase compunction, and purify thy conscience. That thou mayest live to me in purity and peace, rate the whole world at nothing, and abstract thy thoughts and desires from its cares and pleasures; for thou canst not live to me, while thou seekest delight in the transitory enjoyments of time and sense. Thou must wean thy heart from all human consolation and dependence; and be able to forsake even thy most intimate associates and dearest friends. This duty, and the ground of it, I have already taught thee by my Apostle Peter, who earnestly beseeches my faithful followers to consider themselves as, what they truly are, “*strangers and pilgrims*” in the world; and, in that character, to abstain from the indulgence of earthly and carnal affections, “*which war against the soul.*”

3. With what confidence and peace shall that man, in the hour of his dissolution, look on death, whom no personal affection or worldly interest binds down to the present life! But the sensual and sickly soul is not capable of such abstraction; nor can the natural man conceive the power of this heaven-born liberty of spirit. When, however, he feels the desire of this inestimable privilege kindled within him, he must labour to renounce all
partial

partial affections and interests, of whatever nature or degree; and, above all enemies, guard against himself. When Self is once overcome, the conquest of every other evil will be easy. This is the true victory, this the glorious triumph of The New Man! And he, whose sensual appetite is kept in continual subjection to his spirit, and his spirit in continual subjection to My Will; he is this mighty conqueror of himself, and the lord of the whole world.

4. If, with holy ambition, thou desirest to ascend this height of perfection, thou must set out with a resolved will, and first lay the axe to the root, that the hidden life of Self may be cut off, and all desire of personal gratification in the enjoyment of earthly good be utterly extirpated. From self-love, as the corrupt stock, are derived the numerous branches of that evil, which forms the trials of man in his struggles for Redemption; and when this stock is plucked up by the roots, Holiness and Peace will be implanted in its room, and flourish for ever with unfading verdure. But how few labour at this extirpation! how few seek to obtain that Divine Life, which can only rise from the death of Self! And thus men lie bound in the complicated chains of animal passions, unwilling, and, therefore, unable, to rise above the selfish enjoyments of flesh and blood. But
he

he that desireth to “*follow me in the regeneration*” with an enlarged heart, must endeavour to suppress and kill the evil appetites and passions of his fallen nature; and not by a partial fondness, which hath its birth from Self-love, adhere to any creature.

CHAPTER XLI.

OF THE DIFFERENT CHARACTERS
AND OPERATIONS OF NATURE
AND GRACE.

CHRIST.

1. MY son, observe, with watchful attention, the motions of Nature and Grace; for tho’ infinitely different, they are yet so subtle and intricate, as not always to be distinguished, but by an illuminated and sanctified spirit. Men invariably desire the possession of good; and some good is always pretended, as the constant motive of their words and actions; and, therefore, many are deluded by an appearance of good, when the reality is wholly wanting.

2. Nature is crafty; she allures, ensnares, and deceives; and continually designs her own gratification, as her ultimate end. But

S

Grace

Grace walks in simplicity and truth; “*ab-*
“*stains from all appearance of evil;*” pretends
no fallacious views; but acteth from the pure
love of GOD, in Whom she rests as her
Supreme and Final Good.

3. Nature abhors the death of self; she
will not be restrained, will not be conquered,
will not be subordinate, but reluctantly obeys
when obedience is unavoidable. Grace, on
the contrary, is bent on self-mortification; she
continually resists the sensual appetite; she
seeks occasion of subjection; she longs to be
subdued; and even uses not the liberty she
possesses: she loves to be restrained by the
rules of strict discipline; and so far from de-
siring the exercise of authority and dominion,
it is her continual wish, that in body, soul, and
spirit, she may live in perfect submission to the
will of GOD; and, for the sake of GOD, is
always disposed to humble herself under the
power of every human being.

4. Nature is always labouring for her own
interest; and, in her intercourse with others,
considers only what advantages she can secure
for herself: but Grace is wholly inattentive to
personal profit and convenience; and regards
that most, which is most subservient to the
common good.

5. Nature, as her chief distinction, is fond
of receiving honour and applause; Grace faith-
fully ascribes all honour and praise to GOD,
as His unalienable right.

6. Nature

6. Nature dreads ignominy and contempt, and cannot bear them even in the cause of truth; but Grace rejoices to suffer reproach for The Name of JESUS.

7. Nature courts idleness and rest; Grace shuns idleness as the nurse of sin, and embraces labour as the condition of life.

8. Nature delights in the splendour of dress; she hates and despises what is coarse and vulgar, and wearies imagination in the contrivance of ornament. But Grace thinks not of decorating that body, which is the disgrace and punishment of man; and, therefore, spontaneously puts on the most plain and humble garments, nor refuses even those that are disagreeable to the flesh, ill-fashioned, and decayed.

9. Nature regards only the good and evil of this temporal world; she is elated with success, and depressed by disappointment; and the least breath of reproach kindleth the fire of her wrath. But Grace adheres not to the enjoyments of time and sense: she is unmoved either by loss or gain, and unincensed by the bitterest invectives; and she lives only in the hope of Eternal Life.

10. Nature continually seeks after those treasures, which may not only be corrupted by moth and rust, and stolen by thieves, but which are in themselves perishing and evanescent. Grace lays up all her treasures in Heaven, where nothing perisheth, nothing
S 2 fadeth;

fadeth; and “ *where neither moth nor rust do corrupt, nor thieves break through and steal.*”

11. Nature is covetous; she grasps at peculiarity of possession, and greedily takes what she hates to give away. Grace is benevolent and bountiful to all; assumes no propriety; is contented with the necessary supports of life; and esteems it “ *more blessed to give, than to receive.*”

12. Nature is strongly disposed to the enjoyment of the creatures, to the gratification of sensual desire, and to incessant wandering from place to place in quest of new delight. Grace is continually drawn after GOD and Goodness; she renounces the influence of the creatures, relinquishes the interests of the world, abhors the indulgences of the flesh, restrains the desire of wandering, and even for shame declines being seen in places of public resort.

13. Nature, in the depths of distress, seeks all her comfort from that which produces animal delight: Grace has no comfort but in GOD; and leaving below this visible world, seeks all her rest in the enjoyment of The Sovereign Good.

14. Nature always acts upon principles of self-interest: she does nothing good for its own sake; but for every benefit she confers, expects either a present recompence, or such an establishment in the favour and approbation of men, as will secure a future return of some superiour good; and besides that which she

she hopes to receive back in kind, she desires to have her services and gifts highly esteemed and applauded. Grace, for the highest offices of charity and bounty, expects no recompence from men; but continually looks up to GOD, as her exceeding great reward: she has no temporal interests to secure; for she desires no greater share of the possessions of time, than is necessary to sustain her in her progress to Eternity.

15. Nature exults in the extensive interest of numerous relations and friends; glories in dignity of station, and splendour of descent; fawns upon the powerful; caresses the rich; and, with partial commendation, applauds those most, that are most like herself. But Grace loves her enemies, and, therefore, counts not the number of her friends; she values not the splendour of station, and the nobility of birth, but as they are dignified by superiour virtue: she favours the poor, rather than the rich; compassionates the innocent, more than the powerful; rejoices with him that obeys the Truth, not with the hypocrite; and continually exhorts even the good, not only to “*covet earnestly the best gifts,*” but in “*a more excellent way,*” by *Divine Charity*, to become like THE SON OF GOD.

16. Nature, when she feels her want and misery, quickly and bitterly complains; Grace bears, with meekness and patience, all the poverty and wretchedness of this fallen state.

17. Nature refers all excellence to herself; argues and contends for her own wisdom, and her own goodness: but Grace, conscious of her Divine original, refers all the excellence she has to GOD; she does not arrogantly presume upon her own wisdom, and her own goodness, for she ascribes neither goodness nor wisdom to herself; she contends not for a preference of her own opinion to the opinion of another, but in her searches after Truth submits every thought and sentiment to the correction and guidance of Infinite Wisdom.

18. Nature is fond of deep researches, and with eager curiosity listens to that which is new and strange; she affects to be busy about the rectitude of public opinions, and pretends to demonstrate Truth by sensible experiment; she desires to be known as the guardian of men's minds from the imposition of religious error; and pursues those inquiries most, that most attract admiration and applause. But Grace does not follow the cry of novelty, nor suffer herself to be captivated by subjects of curious and refined speculation: she knows, that the lust of vain wisdom is derived from the old stock of human corruption; and that all that is new in this sublunary world, is no more than the varied forms of its own vanity and misery: she, therefore, restrains the busy activity of the senses; suppresses the vain complacency, and shuns the vainer ostentation of human

human learning; conceals, under the veil of humility, the gifts and graces of THE HOLY SPIRIT; and, in every observation and discovery, seeks only the fruits of holiness, and the praise and honour of GOD. She desires not that herself, and her own wisdom and goodness, may be proclaimed and celebrated; but that GOD may be blest and glorified in all His gifts, Who with pure love bestoweth all that is possessed both by Angels and men.

19. Such is the transcendency of Grace to Nature! She is the offspring of The Light of Heaven, the Immediate Gift of GOD, the peculiar distinction of the Elect, and the pledge of Eternal Happiness; by whose power, the soul is raised from earth to heaven, and from carnal transformed to spiritual. The more, therefore, Nature is suppressed and subdued, the more Grace lives and triumphs; and by super-added communications of light and strength, "*the inward man is, day by day,*" more and more "*renewed*" after THE IMAGE OF GOD.

DISCIPLE.

20. O LORD, my GOD, Who didst create me after Thy Own Divine Image, from which I am now fallen; mercifully bestow upon me The Grace which Thou hast represented as so necessary to my restoration, that my most depraved nature, which is always tending to

fin and to perdition, may be totally subdued! I feel in myself a “*law of sin warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity*” to sensual and malignant passions, which I cannot resist, till THY HOLY SPIRIT kindles in my heart another fire.

21. I have need of the continual operation of His Sanctifying Power, to overcome all the workings of revolted nature, which is disposed to evil from its birth. It fell in Adam, and fallen descended from him to all mankind, who have increased its obliquity by voluntary and habitual sin: so that nature, which came forth from Thee pure and blessed, and in union with The Light of Heaven, is now spoken of, to express the impurity, darkness, and misery of man; for, left to its own motions, it is ever seeking itself, and tending to the enjoyments of that animal and earthly state into which it is fallen. The small portion of that Divine Breath which panteth after Thee, is like a spark of fire buried under a heap of ashes. This is The New Nature born of The Seed of THE ETERNAL WORD, mercifully reserved in the human soul as the only principle of its Redemption; which, though surrounded with darkness, and repressed by animal passions, has yet some real discernment of the essential and immutable difference between good and evil, truth and falsehood; but not having received the full irradiation of
Divine

Divine Light, nor recovered the strength and purity of its affections, it is feeble in its purposes of duty, and unable to fulfil even that which it approveth.

22. From this ground it is, O my GOD! that “*I delight in thy law after the inward*” “*man,*” convinced that “*the commandment is*” “*holy, just, and good,*” condemning all evil, and warning against the practice of it; “*but*” “*with the flesh I serve the law of sin,*” and submit to the rigorous tyranny of sensual appetite, instead of the mild government of Thy Spirit: from this it is, that “*to will is*” “*present with me; but how to perform that*” “*which is good, I find not:*” from this it is, that I form many purposes of holiness; but upon the trial of my strength to accomplish them, am driven back by the least difficulty: and from this, that tho’ I know the path that leads to the summit of perfection, and clearly discern by what steps it is to be ascended; yet laden and oppressed with the burthen of my corruption, I am unable to make any progress in it. How indispensably necessary, therefore, is Thy Grace, O LORD! by whose power alone every good work must be begun, continued, and perfected! Without that power, I can do nothing that is acceptable to Thee; but, with it, I can do all things.

23. O Grace essentially Divine! thou hast all merit within thyself, and givest to the endowments of nature all their value; for what
is

is beauty, or strength, or wit, or learning, or eloquence, in The Sight of GOD, where Grace does not dwell? The endowments of Nature are common to the evil and the good; but the ornaments of Grace are the peculiar marks of the Elect, and all that are distinguished by them shall inherit Eternal Life. The chief ornament of Grace is Charity; without which, neither the gift of prophecy, nor the power of working miracles, nor the knowledge of the profoundest mysteries, are of any profit: not even faith, and hope, and that zeal which bestoweth all its possessions to feed the poor, and giveth the body to be burned, are acceptable to Thee, O GOD! without Charity.

Come, then, O MEEKNESS OF THE LAMB OF GOD! Thou, who makest the poor in spirit rich in goodness, and the rich in goodness poor in spirit; O come, descend into my soul, and fill it with the light and comfort of Thy Blessed Presence, lest it faint and perish in the darkness and barrenness of its fallen state!

24. O God of all Grace and consolation! that I may find Grace in Thy Sight, is the sum of my requests; for Thy Grace is abundantly sufficient to supply all my wants, if I were even destitute of every thing that Nature loves and covets to obtain. Tho' I am tempted and troubled on every side; "*yea, tho' I walk thro' the valley of the shadow of death;*"
yet,

yet, while Thy Grace is with me, “*I will fear no evil.*” She is my strength, my council, and my defence; mightier than all enemies, and wiser than all the wise! She is the revealer of Truth, the mistress of holy discipline, the sanctifier of the heart, the comforter of affliction, the banisher of fear and sorrow, the nurse of devotion, the parent of contrition; without whose quickening power, I should soon become an unfruitful and withered branch upon The Tree of Life, fit only to be cast away, or thrown into the fire. Grant, therefore, O most merciful LORD, that Thy Grace may abide with me continually; and produce in me an earnest desire and longing after The Renovation of THY DIVINE IMAGE, which is almost effaced by sin!

CHAPTER XLII.

THAT WE MUST DENY OURSELVES,
TAKE UP THE CROSS OF CHRIST,
AND FOLLOW HIM.

CHRIST.

1. THE more thou forsakeſt thyſelf, my ſon, the nearer wilt thou approach to me. To abandon the deſire of earthly good, is the only way to obtain inward peace; and to abandon

don thy own will, is the only way to become united to GOD: I would have thee, therefore, without the least reluctance or murmur, make an unreserved sacrifice of thyself to My Will. Follow me; "*I am The Way, The Truth, and The Life:*" without the Way which I have opened, thou canst not return to Paradise; without the Truth which I communicate, thou canst not know the Way; and without the Life which I quicken, thou canst not obey the Truth. I am the Way which thou must go, the Truth thou must believe, and the Life thou must desire and hope for: I am the invariable and perfect Way; the supreme and infallible Truth; the blessed, the uncreated, and endless Life. If thou continuest in my Way, "*thou shalt know The Truth, and The Truth shall make thee free,*" and fit thee for the possession of Eternal Life.

2. This I have already declared in the sacred records of my precepts: and have also told thee, that, "*if thou wilt enter into life, thou must keep the commandments;*" if thou wilt know The Truth, thou must "*continue in my word; if thou wilt be perfect, thou must sell all that thou hast;*" if thou wilt be my disciple, thou must "*deny thyself;*" if thou wilt keep thyself for Eternal Life, thou must hate thy temporal life; if thou wouldst be exalted in Heaven, thou must humble thyself on earth; and if thou wilt reign with me, thou must
take

take up thy Cross, and suffer with me: for the path of light and glory is found only by the servants of The Cross, who “*thro’ much tribulation must enter into The Kingdom of GOD.*”

DISCIPLE.

3. LORD JESUS! Thy Way is narrow and painful, and despised by the world: do Thou, therefore, enable me to walk in it, and with meekness and patience to bear the contempt of the world; “*for the disciple is not above his master, nor the servant above his lord.*” Let thy servant be continually exercised in the study and imitation of Thy Most Holy Life, in which all his perfection and blessedness is centered. Whatever else I hear, or read, or think of, gives me neither instruction nor delight.

CHRIST.

4. Son, “*if thou knowest these things, happy art thou if thou doest them.*” “*He that bath my commandments, and keepeth them; he it is that loveth me: and I will love him, and will manifest myself to him;*” and make him to sit down with me in The Kingdom of my Father.

DISCIPLE.

5. LORD, I beseech Thee, that this gracious promise may be accomplished in thy servant!

vant! I have received The Cross from Thee; and by the strength of that Almighty Hand which laid it upon me, I have borne it, and will bear it even unto death. The Life which Thou quickenest in thy disciples, is, indeed, a continual Cross to the appetites and passions of fallen nature; but it is The Light that must guide them back to Paradise. This important journey is begun: O suffer me not to look back with a partial and selfish fondness for the good of this world, however specious; lest I incur the dreadful disqualification for “*the inheritance of Thy Kingdom!*”

6. Come, my beloved brethren, let us take courage, and hand in hand pursue our journey in The Path of Life; JESUS will be with us! For JESUS' sake we have taken up The Cross; and for JESUS' sake, we will persist in bearing it: He, who is our Captain and our Guide, will be our strength and our support. Behold our King, who will fight our battles, leads the way! Let us resolutely follow, undismayed by any terrors; and let us chuse death, rather than stain the glory of which we are made partakers, by deserting The Cross.

CHAPTER XLIII.

AGAINST EXTRAVAGANT DEJECTION,
UPON BEING SOMETIMES
BETRAYED BY HUMAN WEAKNESS.

CHRIST.

1. HUMILITY and patience, my son, under adversity, are more acceptable to me, than much joy and fervour when all is prosperous without and peaceful within.

2. Why art thou offended and grieved at every little injury from men; when, if it were much greater, it ought to be borne without emotion? As fast as such evils rise, let their influence be banished from thy mind: they are not new; thou hast met with many, and, if thy life be long, shalt meet with many more.

3. When adversity stands not in thy path, thou boastest of thy fortitude; and canst also give excellent counsel to others, whom thou expectest to derive strength from thy exhortations: but no sooner do the same evils that oppressed them turn upon thyself, than thy fortitude forsakes thee, and thou art destitute both of counsel and strength. O let the frequent

quent instances of the power which the lightest evils have over thee, keep thee continually mindful of thy great frailty. No evil, however, is permitted to befall thee, but what may be made productive of a much greater good.

4. When thou meetest with injury from the violence or treachery of men, exert all thy resolution to drive the thoughts of it from thy heart: but if it toucheth thee too sensibly, to be soon buried in forgetfulness, let it neither depress nor vex thee; and if thou canst not bear it chearfully, at least bear it patiently. If any censure that is uttered against thee, be too severe and cruel to be heard in silence, suppress thy indignation before it bursteth into flames; and suffer no expression of impatience and resentment to escape thy lips, that may give occasion of scandal to the weak. The storm that is thus raised within thee, will soon subside; and the wounds thy heart has received from the arrows of reproach, shall be healed by the influence of Restoring Grace. I live for ever; ready to help thee upon all occasions, and to bestow more abundant consolations upon thee, if thou puttest thy whole trust in my aid, and devoutly callest upon me for it.

5. Keep thy mind calm and patient, and girded for severer conflicts. But because thou art often strongly tempted, deeply troubled, and easily subdued, thou must not, therefore, think,

think, that all is lost: thou art man, not GOD; a spirit fallen into a corrupt animal body, not a pure Angel: and how canst thou expect to continue in one unchangeable state of holiness, when this was not the privilege of Lucifer in Heaven, nor of Adam in Paradise, who stood not long in their original perfection? Give up thyself wholly to my mercy: I am he, who comforteth all that mourn; and raiseth to a participation of Divine Strength, all that are truly sensible of their own weakness.

DISCIPLE.

6. Thy words, O LORD, distil as dew, and are “*sweeter*” to my taste “*than honey, or the honey-comb.*” What would become of me, in the midst of so much darkness, corruption, and misery, without THY HOLY SPIRIT to illuminate, sanctify, and comfort me? I will regard not what nor how much I suffer, if I can but be made capable of enjoying Thee, my Supreme and Only Good! Be mindful of me, O most merciful GOD! Grant me a safe passage thro’ this vale of sin and sorrow, and in the true path conduct me to Thy Heavenly Kingdom! Amen.

CHAPTER XLIV.

AGAINST THE VAIN AND PRESUMPTUOUS INQUIRIES OF REASON INTO SUBJECTS, THAT ARE ABOVE THE COMPREHENSION OF THE NATURAL MAN.

CHRIST.

1. FORBEAR to reason, my son, upon deep and mysterious subjects, especially The Secret Judgments of GOD. Ask not, why this man is forsaken, and that distinguished by a profusion of Grace; why one is so deeply humbled, and another so eminently exalted. These things surpass the limits of human understanding; nor can the deepest reasoning investigate the proceedings of The Most High. When, therefore, such questions are either suggested by the enemy, or proposed by the vain curiosity of men, answer, in the words of the Royal Prophet, “*Righteous art Thou, O LORD; and just are Thy Judgments! The Judgments of The LORD are true, and righteous altogether.*” My judgments are to be feared, not discussed; for they are incomprehensible to every understanding but my own.

2. For-

2. Forbear also to inquire and dispute concerning the preeminence of the saints; who is the most holy, and who the greatest in The Kingdom of Heaven. These questions produce the strife of unprofitable debate, and nourish the presumption and vain-glory of which they are born: and while one, in the pride of human wisdom, insolently contends for the superiour excellence of this saint, and another for that; it is impossible, but that envyings and dissensions must rise among those, who should “*love as brethren:*” but I am not a GOD of dissension, but of peace; and the interests of peace are promoted by meekness and humility, not by strife and self-exaltation.

3. That love, which, with such passionate ardour, preferreth and exalteth one saint above another, is not born of THE SPIRIT, but is earthly and sensual. I am He, who formed all the saints; I gave them Grace, I have exalted them to glory: I conferred the peculiar excellence which distinguishes each, “*pre-
“ venting him with the blessings of goodness:*” I knew my beloved before the birth of time; and chose those out of the world, who had not chosen me: I called them by the free determination of Sovereign Goodness, drew them with the Cords of Love, and led them in safety through various temptations: I poured upon them the consolations of my Spirit, and

crowned the patience which I enabled them to exercise: I own the last as well as the first, and embrace every one with inestimable love: I alone, who am always to be blest and praised, am to be “*admired and glorified in all my saints.*” He, therefore, who despiseth the least of these my servants, honoureth not the greatest; for, “*I have made both the small and great, and care for all alike.*” but by despising one member of The Kingdom of Heaven, he not only dishonoureth the rest, but dishonoureth me: for all are united, by Divine Charity, into one body, of which I am the head; all will and desire the same unchangeable good; and all love one another in The Unity of His Spirit, Who is All in All.

4. They are raised far above the influence of unredeemed nature, which is ever tending to the love of Self; and are passed into My Love, in which they dwell with unutterable peace and joy. This Love no power is able to alter or suppress; for it is the inextinguishable fire of their own life, “*delivered from the bondage of darkness,*” and restored to its union with Eternal Truth. Let not, therefore, vain and sensual men, who have no conception of higher good than is found in the selfish enjoyments of their earthly life, presume any longer to dispute concerning the state of the saints, and their different degrees of perfection and glory: their decisions are governed

governed by the heat of animal passions, not directed by The Spirit of Truth; and they give honour to one saint, and take it away from another, in conformity to their predominant humour, or in subserviency to their prevailing interest.

5. There are some, indeed, in whom these mistaken notions and partial attachments proceed from ignorance, without any mixture of interest or design; who, having attained but an inferiour degree of Illumination, know not the power of Divine Love. They are determined in the preference both of angels and men, by natural instincts, and those personal singularities which are the foundation of private friendship; and the same distinctions of opinion and affection, are made in the characters of the glorified inhabitants of Heaven, as prevail among the inferiour characters of imperfect men on earth. But these characters are totally incommensurate; a truth which the unenlightened know not, and which the enlightened only know by the teaching of The Spirit of Truth.

6. Beware then, my son, of being led by vain curiosity to “*search the things that are*” “*above thy strength;*” and let all thy faculties be employed in that only needful and important inquiry, how thou thyself mayest be found in The Kingdom of Heaven, tho’ in the least and lowest place. If it was possible

for any one to know, who is the most holy, and who the greatest there, what would that knowledge avail him, unless it made him more humble, and excited in him greater ardour to glorify my Name? He, who, in constant attention to the state of his own soul, laments the multitude and enormity of his sins, and the small number and imperfection of his virtues; and when he thinks on the saints, thinks only how exceedingly remote he is from the perfection which they have attained; is more acceptable to me, than he who employs his time and thoughts in considering and disputing about the different degrees of excellence and glory, that distinguish the particular members of that illustrious assembly. It is infinitely more useful, and more safe, with tears and prayers to implore Grace to imitate the great examples they have left upon earth; than to labour, by fruitless inquiries into their state in Heaven, to know what no human understanding is able to comprehend.

7. The saints are highly blest, and perfectly content; and men should be content with the imperfect knowledge of their fallen state, and suppress their vain curiosity, and refrain from their vainer disputes. They glory not in any personal excellence; for they arrogate no good themselves, but ascribe all to me, who with infinite liberality have freely given them whatever they possess: and the consummation of
their

their own honour and happiness, is found in their boundless love of GOD, and their joyful celebration of His praise. The more exalted their state is, the more humble is their spirit, and the more conformable and dear to me: and, therefore, it is written, that “*the four*” “*and twenty elders,*” who were seated round The Throne of Heaven, “*cast their crowns*” “*before The Throne; and fell down before Him*” “*that sat on The Throne; and worshipped Him,*” “*that liveth for ever and ever.*”

8. Many solicitously inquire, who is greatest in The Kingdom of Heaven; that utterly neglect the only important inquiry, whether they themselves shall be thought worthy to be numbered among the least. To be the least, where all are great, is to be great; and all in Heaven are great, for they are the adopted sons and heirs of GOD: “*a little one shall become*” “*a thousand, and the child shall die an hundred*” “*years old; but the sinner an hundred years old*” “*shall be accursed.*”

9. When the disciples whom I have chosen to attend my ministry upon earth, clamorously inquired, who should be “*the greatest in The*” “*Kingdom of Heaven;*” it was answered, “*Except ye be converted, and become as little*” “*children, ye shall not enter into The Kingdom*” “*of Heaven. But whosoever shall humble*” “*himself as a little child, the same is greatest*” “*in The Kingdom of Heaven.*” Woe be to
T 4
them,

them, therefore, who, in the pride of human attainments, disdain the spontaneous and meek humility of little children; for the gate of The Kingdom of Heaven is too low to give them entrance! “*Woe unto them that are rich, who say they are increased in mental riches, and have need of nothing, for they have received their consolation;*” and whilst the poor enter into The Kingdom, they shall stand weeping and wailing without! But rejoice, ye humble; and leap for joy, ye poor in spirit! for while ye continue in The Truth that has made you what ye are, “*yours is The Kingdom of GOD!*”

CHAPTER XLV.

THAT ALL HOPE AND CONFIDENCE
IS TO BE PLACED IN GOD ALONE.

DISCIPLE.

I. LORD! what is my confidence in this life, and what my comfort in the possession and enjoyment of all things under Heaven? Is it not Thee alone, O LORD my GOD, Whose mercies are without number, and without measure? Where hath it been well with me, when Thou wert absent? or where could it
be

be ill, when Thou wert present? I had rather be naked, hungry, and despised, with Thee; than abound in honour, wealth, and pleasure, without Thee: would rather chuse, with Thee, to wander upon the earth, and have no place “*where to lay my head;*” than, without Thee, to possess a throne in Heaven. But, where Thou art, There is Heaven; and death and hell are only there where Thou art not. Thou art the desire of my soul; and to Thee, my sighs and groans, my cries and prayers, shall continually ascend! There is none that is able to deliver me from my necessities, none in whose power and goodness I can trust, but Thee, O my GOD! Thou art my refuge and my hope, in every distress; my most Powerful Comforter, and most Faithful Friend!

2. Men seek themselves, and their own interest; Thou seekest only my redemption from the bondage of evil, and orderest all Thy dispensations for its accomplishment. Tho’ Thou permittest me to be exposed to the trial of various troubles, yet thou mercifully superintendest the conflict, and directest the event for my supreme and everlasting good: “*for whom Thou lovest, Thou chastenest; and scourgest every son whom Thou receivest.*” And in this awful probation, Thou art not less to be loved and praised, than when Thou fillest my soul with heavenly consolations. Thou alone, therefore, O LORD my GOD!
art

art my hope and sanctuary; with Thee I leave all my tribulation and anguish, and resign the beginning, continuance, and end of every trouble, to Thy Blessed Will.

3. Wherever I look for support and consolation out of Thee, I find nothing but weakness and distress: and if Thou dost not revive, strengthen, illuminate, deliver, and preserve me, the friendship of mankind can give no consolation, the strength of the mighty bring no support, the counsel of the wise and the labours of the learned impart no instruction, the treasures of the earth purchase no deliverance, and the most remote and secret places afford no protection. All persons and things that seem to promise peace and happiness, are in themselves vanity and nothing, and subvert the hope that is built upon them: but Thou art The Supreme, Essential, and Final Good; The Perfection of Life, Light, and Love! and the most powerful support of thy servants, is found in an unreserved and absolute dependence upon Thee!

4. *“Unto Thee,”* therefore, *“do I lift up mine eyes, O Thou that dwellest in the Heavens!”* In Thee, my GOD, The Father of Mercies, I place all my confidence! O illuminate and sanctify my soul with the influence of THY HOLY SPIRIT; that being delivered from all that darkness and impurity of its alienated life which Thy eyes cannot
look

look upon, it may become The Living Temple of Thy Holy Presence, the seat of Thy Eternal Glory! In the immensity of Thy Goodness, O LORD! and “*in the multitude of Thy Tender Mercies, turn unto me;*” and hear the prayer of thy poor servant, who has wandered far from Thee into the region of the shadow of death. O protect and keep my soul amidst the innumerable evils which this corruptible life is always bringing forth; and by the perpetual guidance of Thy Grace, lead me in the narrow path of Holiness to the realms of Everlasting Light, Love, and Peace. Amen.

THE END OF THE THIRD BOOK;

AND OF

THE IMITATION OF CHRIST.

THE

* THE BOOK OF THE SACRAMENT.

CHAPTER I.

WITH WHAT REVERENCE CHRIST
IS TO BE RECEIVED.

*“ COME unto me, all ye that labour, and
“ are heavy laden, and I will refresh you.”
“ The bread that I will give, is my flesh;
“ which I will give for The Life of the world.”
“ Take,*

* In all the later editions of The Original, except M. VALART's, and in most English Translations, this “ Book of the Sacrament” is printed, not only as a Part, but as the LAST PART “ Of The Imitation of CHRIST,” describing the Highest State of the Christian Life.

In M. VALART's edition, the three preceding books are expressly distinguished, at the beginning and conclusion of each, as *The First, Second, and Third Book, “ Of The Imitation of CHRIST:”* And tho' “ The Book of the Sacrament” is called *The Fourth Book*, as it is the fourth in the volume; yet it is not called, “ The Fourth Book of The Imitation of CHRIST;” but “ *The Fourth Book of the Sacrament:*” and at the conclusion, it is not said, “ The End of the Fourth Book of the Imitation of CHRIST;” nor even “ The End of the Fourth Book,” as it is improperly called in the title; but “ *The End of the Book of the Sacrament.*”

The rejection of this “ Book of the Sacrament,” as A Part “ Of The Imitation of CHRIST,” is supported by the
authority

*“ Take, eat; this is my body, which is given
 “ for you: this do in remembrance of me. This
 “ cup is the New Testament in my blood; drink
 “ ye all of it: this do ye, as oft as ye drink it,
 “ in remembrance of me.”*

*“ He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my
 “ blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.”*

*“ The Words which I speak unto you, They
 “ are Spirit, and They are Life.”*

authority of various manuscripts: and in Fontebraldæus's edition of the Author's Works, printed at Antwerp in the year 1574, the Catalogue of them begins thus:

I. Of The Imitation of CHRIST: in Two Books. The *First Book* containing xxxvii chapters, (that is, the First Book of xxv chapters, and the Second Book of xii chapters, as they are divided in later editions, comprehended in one:) The *Second Book* containing lxiv chapters.

II. The Book of the Sacrament.

But besides the evidence of manuscripts and old printed copies, The great Inferiority of this “ Book of the Sacrament” to the Three preceding Books, is a sufficient proof, that, if written by the same Author, it was not written at the same time, and with a design to be made part of the same work. It seems to consist of occasional exercises on the sacrament, thrown together without order or connection; and it is so tinged with the peculiarities of Popery, that it was necessary for the translator to omit some passages of the Original, and deviate from the precise meaning of others. Whatever, therefore, is said in the Preface in commendation “ Of The Imitation of CHRIST,” must be understood to include only the three preceding books.

DISCIPLE.

DISCIPLE.

1. These are Thy Words, O CHRIST, Eternal Truth! tho' not spoken at the same time, nor written in the same place. As they are Thine, and, therefore, true, they are all to be received with faith and thanksgiving. They are Thine, because Thou hast spoken them; and they are also mine, because Thou hast spoken them for my salvation. That they may be truly "*ingrafted*" in my heart, I "*receive them with meekness*" as from Thy Own Lips.

2. These words, so full of tenderness and love, encourage me to come to Thee; but my sins terrify me, and my impure conscience retards my approach to so Holy a Communion. Thy Merciful Invitation raises my desire, but the sense of my numerous transgressions represses it.

3. Thou commandest me to come to Thee in faith, if I would manifest "*The part I have with Thee;*" Thou commandest me to feed on "*The Bread that came down from Heaven,*" if I desire to obtain Everlasting Life: "*Come unto me,*" Thou sayest, "*all ye that labour, and are heavy laden, and I will refresh you.*" O friendly and grateful words to the ear of a poor and needy sinner! But what meaneth this gracious vouchsafement, this most friendly invitation? How shall I dare

I dare to come, who am conscious of no good to encourage my approach! How shall I appear before Thee, who have so often sinned when The Light of Thy Reconciled Countenance has been lifted up upon me! Angels and Archangels prostrate themselves before Thee; The Holy and The Just tremble in Thy Presence! and sayest Thou, "*Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden*" with the burthen of sin? Unless Thy Own Lips, O LORD, had uttered this, who could have believed it to be true? Unless Thou Thyself hadst commanded us to come, who would have dared to approach?

4. Noah, a just man, laboured an hundred years in building an ark at Thy Command, that he and his little family might be saved; and can I, in one hour, prepare my heart to receive, with becoming reverence, Him Who made the world? Moses, Thy faithful servant and distinguished friend, framed an ark of incorruptible wood, and overlaid it with the purest gold, to be a repository for the tables of the law; and shall I, a corrupt and impure creature, lightly presume to receive The Maker of the law, and The Giver of Life? Solomon, the wisest of the kings of Israel, employed seven years in erecting a magnificent temple to the honour of Thy Name: eight days were taken up in celebrating the feast of its dedication; a thousand peace-offerings were made; and

and the Ark of the Covenant was solemnly conducted to the place appointed to receive it, with the sound of trumpets, and all the pomp of public joy: and shall I, a most wretched creature, and the poorest of mankind, dare to bring Thee into my earthly and sinful tabernacle, when I know not how to pass one hour in true devotion? O that I could worthily employ even less than half an hour, in a preparation to receive Thee!

5. How great, O my GOD, was the zeal and labour of these saints, to reverence Thy Name, and obey Thy Will! How languid, alas, are my warmest affections, how short and inconsiderable my best services! What a small space of time do I employ, in preparing my heart for Thy Holy Communion! I am seldom free from distraction, very seldom totally recollected: and yet, surely, in Thy Life-giving Presence, no earthly thought ought to intrude, no created object engage my attention; for it is not an Angel, but the Lord of Angels, that I receive as my guest. There is an incommensurate distance between the Ark of the Covenant with all its sacred appurtenances, and Thy most Pure Body and its ineffable Virtues; between those legal sacrifices, “*the shadow of good things to come*,” and the oblation of Thyself, the end and perfection of all preceding sacrifices! Why, then, is not my desire of Thy Adorable Presence more ardent? why, when those holy patriarchs and

U

prophets,

prophets, with people, princes and kings, manifested such affectionate devotion in the ceremonials of that worship which was but a type of Thee; why do not I, with more awful reverence, and more exalted love, prepare to receive Thyself? In the recollection of the wonderful benefits conferred in times past on his forefathers, the most zealous king David danced before the Ark of GOD “*with all his might.*” He constructed musical instruments of various kinds; he composed psalms, and appointed them to be sung as the expressions of a joyful heart: he also often sung himself; and, inspired by The Holy Ghost, tuned his harp, and raised his voice, to celebrate Thy Name: he taught the people of Israel to praise GOD with their whole heart, and in harmonious concert every day to bless Him, and declare His wonderful works. And if such devotion was then kindled; if there was such a faithful remembrance of GOD’s Mercies, and such a joyful celebration of his Praise, before the Ark of the Old Covenant; what awful reverence, what fervent gratitude, what rapturous devotion, ought I and all Christian people to feel, when we approach The Presence of CHRIST, The Mediator of The New Covenant, and partake of His most precious Body and Blood!

6. Many make long pilgrimages to various places, to visit the reliques of saints: they hear, with wonder, the recital of their actions;

tions; they view, with reverence, the magnificence of their shrines; and, with zealous devotion, kiss the embroidered silks that cover their bones: and, behold! Thou, my GOD, The Creator of saints, and The Lord of Angels, art now spiritually present with me, at Thy Holy Altar! Those pilgrimages are often prompted by human curiosity, which is insatiable in its desire of something new and wonderful; and men bring home but small improvements in holiness, especially when they wander thus from place to place without contrition. But here, Thou, CHRIST JESUS, art present, both as God and Man; here The Bread of Everlasting Life is bountifully dispensed to all that will worthily and devoutly receive it; and hither we are drawn, not by light fancy, vain curiosity, or sensual desire, but by lively faith, exalted hope, and fervent charity.

7. O GOD, The Invisible Creator of The Universe, how wonderful are Thy Dispensations to fallen man! How graciously and liberally hast Thou provided for the support and refreshment of The Regenerate Nature, the object of Thy Election, to which, in this blessed sacrament, Thou givest Thyself for food! A gift that surpasseth all understanding; that, with a peculiar power, attracts the heart that can alone turn to Thee, and kindles the affections that can alone aspire after Thee!

and This Son of Heaven, This New Man in CHRIST, who is always fighting for the Recovery of his first state in Thee, from every participation of The Bread of Life, derives new strength of devotion, and more ardour of desire after his original perfection! O wonderful and mysterious influence of this blessed Communion! which the faithful sons of CHRIST truly experience, but of which the unfaithful, who are willing slaves to this sinful life, have no perception. Here is conferred that Restoring Grace, by which the shattered strength of The New Nature is repaired, and its Heavenly Beauty, often obscured by the sinful nature with which in this fallen state it is compelled to live, renewed in its native lustre: nay, so powerful is its vital operation, that even the frail and feeble body has sometimes partaken of its influence, and felt a new supply of health and vigour.

8. How deplorable, therefore, O Most Amiable Saviour, is that coldness and negligence, with which we come to receive Thee, our Sanctification and Redemption, our Righteousness and Hope of Glory, The Comfort of our earthly pilgrimage, and The Blessedness of our eternal state! Deplorable beyond measure is it, that so many should attend so little to the nature of this Blessed Communion, which preserves the inhabitants of earth in a state of Redemption, and diffuses joy through the hosts
of

of Heaven! O the blindness and obduracy of the human heart, not to consider and prize so ineffable a gift; but, from the continual enjoyment of it, to grow insensible of its value!

9. If this most holy ordinance was celebrated but in one place, and administered but by one priest in the world, with what eager desire would men resort to that distinguished place and that chosen priest, to be made partakers of its Divine benefits! Now many priests are ordained, and the Communion of the Body and Blood of CHRIST is celebrated in many places: and tho' men neglect those blessings most, that are most frequently and extensively dispensed; yet the manifestations of The Grace and Love of God towards them, are more apparent, the more the celebration of this Blessed Communion is spread through the world.

10. I give Thee Thanks, therefore, O Most Benign JESUS, Eternal "*Shepherd of our souls,*" that Thou so often condescendest to feed Thy wandering and feeble flock, with Thy Own most precious body; and that Thou Thyself invitest them to partake of that Bread of Life, saying continually to all, "*Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will refresh you!*"

CHAPTER II.

OF THE LOVE OF GOD MANIFESTED
TO MAN IN THIS SACRAMENT.

DISCIPLE.

I, Confiding in Thy Infinite Goodness, and the multitude of Thy Tender Mercies, behold, O GOD, I come! I come, diseased and sick, to The Physician of my soul; hungry and thirsty, to “*The Fountain of Salvation*,” and “*The Bread of Life* ;” poor and needy, to the King of Heaven; a servant, to his Gracious Lord; a creature, to his Bountiful Creator; a desolate and disconsolate wretch, to his All-loving and All-powerful Comforter! But how shall a sinner dare to appear in Thy Presence? and how is it, that Thou thus condescendest to permit the visit of a sinner? Thou hast searched Thy servant, and Thou knowest that he has nothing to plead for such transcendent favour. I will, therefore, magnify Thy Bounty, by the acknowledgment of my own unworthiness; I will extol Thy Free Grace, and admire and thank Thy boundless Mercy. In me there is no good, but what Thy Spirit pro-

produceth ; and it cannot be for my merits, that Thou admittest me to this Holy Communion, but for the more gracious manifestation of Thyself ; that I may more truly know Thy amazing Condescension, more fully experience Thy Humility and Love. As, therefore, Thou hast commanded me to come to Thee, I am ready to yield chearful obedience to Thy Will ; and I pray that my sins may not impede my approach.

2. O most sweet and benign JESUS ! what reverence, gratitude, and praise, are perpetually due to Thee, for the Communion of Thy most Sacred Body, the high and mysterious powers of which no creature is able to unfold ? But what thoughts shall fill my mind, in my approach to the Communion of my LORD, Whom, tho' I am unable to give Him due reverence, my heart ardently desires to receive ? What, O LORD, can so fitly and usefully engage me, as the total humiliation of my own spirit, and the exaltation of Thy Goodness ? I glorify Thee, O my GOD, I extol Thee as the object of Eternal Praise ! I despise myself, and prostrate my soul before Thee in the depths of its unworthiness ! Thou art consummate in Holiness, and I am altogether sinful ; Thou inclinest Thyself to me, and I am not worthy to lift up my eyes before Thee. Thou comest to me, and wouldst “ *make Thy abode with me :*” Thou invitest

me to Thy Supper ; and givest me to eat of
“ *The Heavenly Manna, The Bread of An-*
“ *gels ;*” even nothing less than Thyself,
“ *The Living Bread that came down from*
“ *Heaven, and giveth Life to the world !*”

3. O whence could such condescension proceed, but from Infinite Love ! and what gratitude and praise less than infinite, can truly acknowledge it ! How wise and salutary was Thy Design, in the institution of this Life-sustaining Supper ! How rich and how delightful is that banquet, in which Thou givest Thyself for food ! Thy Operations, O LORD, exceed our wonder ; Thy Word is Omnipotent, and Thy Ways are past finding out ! Thou didst once speak, and all things were created ; Thou hast now spoken, and that is done which Thou didst command !

4. Surpassing all understanding, and worthy of all faith and admiration is it, that Thou, my LORD GOD, True God and Man, shouldst to all that devoutly commemorate Thy Death, give Thy precious Body and Blood, as the sustenance of that Spiritual Life which Thou hast regenerated in their souls ! O GOD of universal nature, Who standest not in need of any thing that Thou hast made ; and Who, by this holy institution, hast manifested Thy Desire to dwell within us ; deliver and keep Thy servant from all defilement of the flesh and of the spirit, that with a pure
and

and joyful conscience he may often come to Thy Holy Supper, and eat this bread and drink this wine to his eternal salvation, and to The praise of Thy Holy Name, as the appointed memorials of Thy Redeeming Love!

5. Rejoice, O my soul, and pour forth thy joy in praise and thanksgiving, for so transcendent a gift, so precious a consolation, bequeathed thee in this vale of misery and tears; for as often as Thou receivest The Body of Thy LORD, with a faithful and true discernment of its wonderful efficacy, thou enterest into the process of thy Redemption, and partakest of The Righteousness of CHRIST. The Love of CHRIST is as incapable of change or diminution, as His Own Being; and the treasures of His Propitiation are not to be exhausted: every time, therefore, thou approachest this Holy Mystery, thou shouldst bring a heart animated with new desires, and disposed to receive new impressions of its endless wonders; it should be to thee, as new, as wonderful, and as delightful, as if, at that moment, CHRIST descending into the womb of the Virgin was made man, or hanging upon the Cross suffered and died for The Redemption of the world.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE BENEFITS OF FREQUENT
COMMUNION.

DISCIPLE.

1. Behold, I come to Thee, O LORD, to be enriched by Thy Bounty, to feast at Thy Holy Banquet, which, of Thy Infinite Liberality, Thou hast prepared for the sustenance and comfort of the poor. In Thee, is the sum of my desires! Thou art my Health and my Redemption, my Strength, my Righteousness and Hope of Glory! "*Rejoice,*" therefore, this day "*the soul of Thy servant; for*" "*unto Thee, O LORD, do I lift up my soul!*" I desire now to receive Thee with the highest devotion and reverence; I long to bring Thee into my house, that, like Zaccheus, I may obtain Thy Blessing, and be numbered among the children of Abraham.

2. My soul longeth for the Bread of Heaven, and to be united to Thee by one Divine Principle of Life. Give me Thyself, and it sufficeth; for Thou art all my consolation! Without Thee, I can have no being; and without Thy continual Visitation, my being
cannot

cannot be happy. I am compelled, therefore, to come to Thee for new supplies of health and strength; lest, if withheld from The Bread of Life, I become unable to return to Paradise, and “*faint in the way.*” Thou, O most compassionate JESUS, when preaching to the multitude, and healing their diseases, didst Thyself say, “*I will not send them home fasting, lest they faint in the way:*” do, therefore, now, O LORD, what Thou didst then; extend Thy pity to a poor fainting creature, and impart to him the food Thou hast reposed in this sacrament, for the support and refreshment of all that come to Thee in Faith! Thou art the Only Life and Sustenance of Souls, and they that eat Thee worthily are made partakers of Eternal Glory! It is, indeed, highly necessary for me, who so often grow languid and cold, so often relapse into sin, to turn to Thee in contrition, faith, and prayer; and, by the frequent Communion of Thy Blessed Body, to recover new strength, purity, and ardour, lest by long abstinence I fall irrecoverably from my holy purpose.

3. “*The imagination of man’s heart is evil from his youth;*” and unless Divine Grace interposes to restrain the propensity of his will, he proceeds with impetuosity from evil to evil. Such Grace is found in this Holy Communion; such as quickens and invigorates

rates that Heavenly Power in the soul, which alone can withdraw from evil, and unite with good. And if now I am so often languid and feeble, notwithstanding my participation of this Holy Communion; what should I be, if I never sought after its invigorating succour, never tasted of its Life-restoring food? But tho' I am not every day in a fit disposition for the celebration of it, yet I will labour for that disposition at all convenient seasons, and offer myself before The Throne of Grace as an humble partaker of its Divine Blessings: for it is the chief consolation of the faithful soul, O LORD, in this state of exile from her native Heaven, thus often to commemorate Thy Love, and with renewed devotion enjoy Spiritual Communion with Thee.

4. O wonderful Grace and Condescension of Infinite Majesty! that Thou, O LORD God, The Creator of the universe, and The Life of Angels, shouldst vouchsafe to come to the poor fallen soul of man, and with Thy Deified Humanity satisfy her hunger! O blessed soul, that is thus permitted to receive her LORD; and by receiving Him, to be filled with unutterable joy! O how great a LORD does she receive! how honourable a Guest does she bring to her house! how Sweet a Companion does she entertain! how Faithful a Friend commune with! how Fair and Noble a Spouse does she embrace! even Him,
Who

Who is lovely above all that is beautiful, and worthy to be loved above all that is dear! Let earth, and heaven, and all their glories, disappear in Thy Presence, O most sweet and most beloved Spouse of my soul! for whatever be their beauty and praise, it is all derived from Thy Bounty; and it is infinitely short of The Beauty and Praise of Thy Name, of Whose Wisdom and Goodness there is no measure!

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE BENEFITS BESTOWED ON
DEVOUT COMMUNICANTS.

DISCIPLE.

I. O LORD, my GOD, “*prevent Thy servant with the blessings of Thy Goodness,*” that he may approach Thee with acceptable reverence and devotion! Awaken my heart, that it may seek after Thee; and deliver me from spiritual insensibility! “*O visit me with Thy Salvation;*” and let The Fountain of Living Water, hidden under this sacrament, be opened, that my soul may be refreshed! Enlighten and strengthen my faith to behold the wonders of so Divine a Mystery: for it is not the effect of human power, but of Thy Holy Operation; it is not man’s invention, but Thy
most

most Gracious Institution : and no man is able to comprehend its awful powers, for they surpass the comprehension of Angels. What, therefore, can I, a most unworthy sinner, who am but dust and ashes, of myself discover and know concerning it ?

2. LORD, in singleness of heart, firm faith, and pure obedience to Thy Command, I come to Thee with hope and reverence, and believe that Thou art now spiritually present with me, God and Man : and as it is Thy Will that I should receive Thee thus, and unite myself to Thee in Love ; I implore Thy Mercy, and beg of Thee peculiar Grace, that my soul may overflow with Love ; may be totally dissolved in Thee, and never more desire or think of any other consolation ! For in this high and holy sacrament is found the remedy of spiritual languor, and the health both of body and soul ; here my passions are restrained, my temptations lessened and subdued, and my evil habits removed ; here new and superiour Grace is conferred, imperfect holiness increased, faith enlightened, hope confirmed, and charity inflamed and expanded. Innumerable are the blessings, which Thou, O my GOD, The Safeguard of the soul, The Restorer of its strength and purity, and The Source of all its blessedness, bestowest here upon Thy Children, that come truly disposed to receive them ! Here Thou infusest consolations, superiour to all their troubles ;
raisest

raiseſt them from the depths of ſelf-abafe-
ment, to the glorious hope of Thy Protection;
and, by new and peculiar ſupplies of Grace,
enlighteneſt and ſtrengtheneſt their hearts;
ſo that thoſe, who, before they had taſted of
this heavenly banquet, felt all the coldneſs
and wretchedneſs of fallen nature, experience
a ſudden tranſition to love and joy. And
Thou dealeſt thus with Thy Elect, that they
may know and confeſs, that, in themſelves,
they are nothing but darkneſs, impurity, and
miſery; and that All their Light, Holineſs,
and Bleſſedneſs, belongs to that Divine Na-
ture, which Thou haſt regenerated in them
by Thy Own Spirit. What wonder then,
that they, who, before they come to Thee,
feel themſelves dark, cold, and inſenſible,
ſhould return quickened, illuminated, and
ardent! Who that drinks at a moſt ſweet
fountain, can fail to carry away ſome degree
of ſweetneſs? Who can ſtand near a glowing
fire, and not feel ſome degree of warmth?
Thou, O LORD, art an Inexhauſtible Foun-
tain of Salvation, always overflowing! Thou
art an Eternal Fire, incapable of languor or
decay! And tho', in this fallen ſtate, I am
not permitted to come to The Head of That
Fountain, and drink my fill; yet I will hum-
bly bend my lips to ſome diſtant ſtream, that
I may catch at leaſt a few drops to aſſuage my
thiſt, leſt I be utterly parched up and periſh
with drougth: and tho' I cannot now become
a flame

a flame of fire, like The Seraph, yet, with all my strength, I will excite the ardour of that Divine Life which Thou hast kindled in my soul, that it may burn in union with Thy Eternal Fire!

3. O Holy Jesus, Compassionate Saviour, I feel my own weakness most, when I most desire to come to Thee! Do Thou, therefore, Who hast condescended to invite “*all that labour and are heavy laden*” to come to Thee for Refreshment and Rest, of Thy Infinite Mercy give me strength to obey Thy Gracious Invitation! Indeed, I labour in the sweat of my brow; I am tortured with anguish of heart, laden with sin, disturbed with temptations, subdued and enslaved by many evil passions; and there is none that can comfort me, none that can redeem me, none that restore me to Life, Light, Holiness, and Peace, but Thou, my LORD and my GOD! into Whose Hands I commit myself, body, soul, and spirit, all that I am or can be, that Thou mayst protect and nourish me continually, and fit me for and guide me to Eternal Life! Receive me, therefore, to the praise and glory of Thy Holy Name, Thou Who hast given me Thy Precious Body and Blood for my meat and my drink! and grant, that by the frequent participation of that Heavenly Food, the Strength and Beauty of The Regenerate Nature may be increased and made perfect!

CHAPTER V.

OF THE DUTY PREPARATORY TO
COMMUNION.

DISCIPLE.

1. WHEN I consider Thy Infinite Majesty and Purity, O LORD, and my own vileness and sinfulness, I am seized with fear and trembling, and lost in confusion: for if I come not unto Thee, I withhold myself from Life; and if I unworthily intrude, I incur Thy just displeasure. What, therefore, shall I do, O my GOD! my Strength and my Wisdom in all perplexity and danger? O teach me the right way! Do Thou Thyself instruct me in some holy exercise, suitable to so awful a duty; that, with acceptable reverence and devotion, I may approach the Memorials of Thy Death, and with true faith acknowledge and praise Thee as the Atonement for sin, and The Principle of a Renewed Heavenly Life!

CHRIST.

2. The acceptable performance of the duties of this institution, indispensably requires prostrate reverence and self-abasement, a lively
X faith,

faith, and a pure intention of seeking The Honour of GOD. Examine thy conscience with the severest scrutiny; and, to the utmost of thy power, cleanse and purify it by humble acknowledgment and deep contrition, that no sudden recollection of unrepented guilt may give thee new remorse, and disturb thy free access to the bounties of my love. Abhor the general corruption of thy sinful nature, and particularly deplore the daily enormities of thy sinful life.

3. If time and opportunity are given thee, confess to GOD, in the secret of thy heart, the disorder and misery of all its evil tempers and emotions. Lament and grieve, that thou art still so carnal and worldly; so unmortified in thy passions; so often captivated with vain images; so devoted to external objects and employments, so negligent of the concerns of thy spirit; so disposed to dissolute mirth, so indisposed to compunction and holy sorrow; so fond of relaxation and sensual pleasure, so averse to austerity and spiritual fervour; so curious to hear news and behold wonders, so deaf to The Word of GOD, and so blind to the glories of Heaven; so covetous of possessing, so illiberal in giving, so tenacious in retaining; so unrestrained and inconsiderate in speaking, so eager and precipitate in acting; so luxurious in eating; so inclined to rest, so disinclined to labour; so wakeful at diversions,

sions, so drowsy at morning and evening prayer ; so negligent of all the hours of devotion, or so impatient or so dissipated while they last ; so reluctant in coming to my Communion, and so insensible and indevout when thou dost come ; so easily bewildered and confused, so seldom totally recollected ; so apt to take offence, so suddenly moved to anger ; so rash in censure, so severe in reprehension ; so elate in prosperity, so depressed in adversity ; so often making many holy resolutions, and so seldom keeping one.

4. When, with deep compunction and self-
abhorrence, thou hast confessed and bewailed
thy numerous transgressions and defects, re-
solve to throw aside “ *every weight,*” and
with all thy strength to “ *run the race I have*
“ *set before thee ;*” and, with absolute resig-
nation of thy will, offer up thyself a perpe-
tual holocaust to the honour of my Name,
committing body, soul, and spirit, both for
time and eternity, to the disposals of My
Love : and thus thou mayest safely join in
the Holy Eucharist, and receive my body as
the food and strength of thy Divine Life.

5. This oblation of thyself in union with
that oblation which I have made, is most
acceptable, and most restorative : and when
man, thus repenting and believing, and thus
surrendering up himself, comes to me for
Grace and Pardon, “ *I will be merciful to*

314 OF THE SACRAMENT.

*“ his unrighteousness, and his sins and his ini-
“ quities will I remember no more ; for I have
“ no pleasure in the death of a sinner, but ra-
“ ther that he should turn and live.”*

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE TOTAL OBLATION OF THE
SOUL TO GOD.

C H R I S T.

I. As, naked and extended upon the Cross,
I freely offered up my life to The Father for
thy sake, and every part of me was turned
into The One Atoning Sacrifice for sin; so
shouldst thou, with all thy heart and all thy
strength, offer up thyself a voluntary and to-
tal sacrifice to me. Whatever thou givest me
besides thyself, is of no value; for I seek not
thy gifts, but thee. As no possessions would
be sufficient to fill thy boundless desires, with-
out me, who alone can make thee happy; so
neither can thy most costly offerings please me,
when thou dost not offer up thyself. Thyself
is the only acceptable oblation in The Sight of
GOD. I offered up myself to The Father,
and gave my body and blood for thy meat and
drink, that we might become one nature; but
while thou retainest any part of thyself, and
dost

dost not freely and absolutely surrender all thou art to My Will, thy oblation is not full, and no union can be formed between us. The voluntary and total oblation of thyself, therefore, must precede all other efforts, if thou wouldst obtain the light, liberty, and peace, of The Divine Life. Few become illuminated and free, because few make an entire sacrifice of self: but it is my irreversible decree, that
*“ unless a man forsake himself, and all he hath,
 “ he cannot be my disciple.”*

DISCIPLE.

2. The earth and the heavens are Thine, O LORD, and all their fulness! I desire to make a free surrender of myself to Thee, and to remain Thine for ever. In singleness of heart, O LORD, I now offer up myself, a sacrifice of perpetual obedience and praise. Accept this oblation in union with the Sacred Oblation of Thy Precious Body, which I commemorate this day in the presence of assisting and glorifying Angels, as the Salvation of fallen man.

3. LORD, all the sins which, from the time I was capable of sinning to this hour, I have committed before Thee and Thy holy Angels; I offer upon Thy Propitiatory Altar, to be consumed in The Fire of Thy Love! O purify my spirit from all defilement; restore The Grace which I have lost; grant me full and free pardon, and seal that pardon with the kifs

of peace! What can I do, but humbly confess and bewail my exceeding sinfulness, and incessantly implore the benefits of Thy Propitiation? Here, then, in Thy most Holy Presence, I now plead and implore them; O mercifully hear my prayer! I now detest my sins, and by Thy Grace will never more submit to their hateful tyranny; I now grieve for them in the bitterness of sorrow, and will grieve for them as long as I live, that contrition may “*work in me repentance unto salvation, never to be repented of. Have mercy upon me, O GOD, according to Thy Loving-Kindness; and according to the multitude of Thy Tender Mercies, blot out all my transgressions!*” O save my soul, which Thou hast redeemed with Thy Precious Blood! Behold, I resign myself wholly to Thy Disposal! deal with me according to Thy Mercy, not according to my transgressions!

4. Small and imperfect as it is, I offer Thee all my goodness, that Thou mayst sanctify it, and impart to it new degrees of strength and beauty; and by the continual Influences of Thy Spirit, mayst animate a slothful and unprofitable creature, to the attainment of that Perfection to which Thou hast called him.

5. I offer Thee also the desires of Thy faithful servants; the necessities of my friends and relations; and the distresses of all, that, for the love of Thy Name, seek to promote the good
of

of others: that they may feel the Succours of Thy Grace, the Consolations of Thy Spirit, the Protection of Thy Power, the Pardon of Thy Mercy; and that, delivered from all evil, they may joyfully yield Thee the tribute of everlasting thanksgiving and praise!

6. Lastly, I present Thee my prayers and peace-offerings for all men; particularly for those, that have slandered or oppressed me; and for those, whom, either with or without design, I have offended, grieved, or injured: beseeching Thee to pardon all our violations of Truth, Justice, and Mercy; and to take from our hearts suspicion, animosity, resentment, and revenge, and whatever is contrary to Charity, and tends to lessen Brotherly Love. Have Mercy, O LORD, upon all that implore Thy Mercy! Impart Thy Grace to all that want it! And dispose the hearts of mankind for The Operations of Thy Spirit, and the attainment of Everlasting Life! Amen.

* CHAPTER VII.

THAT THE COMMUNION IS NOT TO
BE NEGLECTED UPON TRIFLING
PRETENCES.

I. THAT thou mayst be healed of all the disorders of thy sinful nature, and made vigilant and strong against the designs and assaults of the Devil; thou must come frequently to The Fountain of Grace and Mercy, of Purity and Love. The old enemy, knowing the salutary and restoring power of this Holy Communion, uses every effort to discourage the Faithful from approaching it; and those that labour most to prepare their hearts for the devout participa-

* M. VALART, sensible of the impropriety of delivering some of the instructions of this book in the character of CHRIST, has introduced A Director of The Spiritual Life, as a third speaker in the dialogue; to whom he has given this, the 12th and 15th chapters, besides another chapter "On the dignity of the sacrament and the priestly function," which is omitted in this translation. But, upon the supposition, that this book is connected with the preceding books, and that it describes the highest state of The Christian Life, a point, of which M. VALART has not been candid enough to declare his opinion; there is, surely, much greater impropriety in introducing a human teacher here, when throughout the third book, which must be supposed to describe an inferior state, the disciple is left wholly to The Instructions of CHRIST.
tion,

tion of it, are most sensible of his malignant influence. That evil spirit still comes among the sons of GOD, to fill them with perplexity, fear, and perturbation; to abate the fervour of their zeal; to subvert their faith; and to make them attend upon the Holy Communion with cold indifference, or to bring them to a total neglect of it. But his impure suggestions must be immediately rejected; his assaults must be despised and defied; and no commotions he may have power to raise, must prevail on thee to absent thyself from The Table of thy LORD.

2. Another impediment to frequent communion, arises from too much solicitude about the raptures of devotion, and too much anxiety about a minute confession of sin: but follow the counsel of The Wise, and divest thy mind of nice and scrupulous fears, which destroy devotion, and obstruct The Grace of GOD. Instead of refraining from Communion on account of trouble and heaviness of spirit, be prompted from the sense of thy weakness and wretchedness more speedily to seek for the aids of The DIVINE SPIRIT; willingly forgive the offences of thy brethren; implore forgiveness of thy own offences; “*be reconciled to those that have aught against thee;*” and doubt not but GOD will be reconciled to thee, and admit thee to his Holy Supper.

3. To what purpose is longer delay? why is this heaviness and sorrow, this inhesion in

trouble, and for the daily infirmities of a frail and imperfect life, this continual absence from Communion with thy Saviour? Now confess and bewail the power which sin hath in thee; now pray that its deadly poison may be expelled; now hasten to obtain the sovereign antidote; and thou wilt soon find thyself greatly restored. But if to-day thou deferrest this important work because of one great impediment, to-morrow another may arise, which thou wilt think greater; and thus delay, instead of insuring a more perfect cure, will only render thee more indisposed to seek thy remedy, and more unfit to receive it.

4. Some, indeed, lest they should be brought under the restraints of holiness, and compelled to self-denial, watchfulness, and prayer, contrive pretences of delay; but how destitute of devotion and love, how dissolute and sensual, must such persons be! On the contrary, how blessed in himself, and how acceptable and dear to GOD, is he, who, by the continual exercise of repentance, faith, and prayer, lives in a continual disposition and preparation for The Holy Communion! An unfitness for the right performance of this duty, may sometimes happen to the holiest man: and if he declines it from an humble sense of his present disqualification; if he laments the impediment, and prays to have it removed; GOD will accept the integrity of his will, and be propitious to his prayer. He may also be hindered by sickness,

ness, or some indispensable work of charity; but while his intention is pure, and his desire of Communion fervent and devout, he will not fail to participate of its spiritual benefits: for tho' all the appointed seasons of Publick Communion are to be faithfully observed, that GOD may be glorified in the assemblies of His saints; yet a devout soul may partake of the Communion of the body and blood of CHRIST every hour of the day; and he spiritually eats and drinks, and is spiritually strengthened and refreshed, as often as he meditates on The Incarnation and Passion of his LORD, and in faith and love turns to and depends upon Him, as The Atonement for sin, and The Life, Health, and Perfection, of The Regenerate Nature. He, who thinks on the duties of Preparation, only at the approach of festivals, and the stated seasons of publick worship, will generally go to The Communion unprepared; and he only is qualified to approach worthily, who often communicates in spirit, and as often offers up himself a whole burnt-offering to The LORD.

5. Let thy devotions at the altar be neither hasty nor tedious, but conformed to the common order of the church; and rather consult the convenience and advantage of thy brethren, than the particular fervours of thy own spirit.

CHAPTER VIII.

THAT THE BODY AND BLOOD OF
CHRIST, AND THE ILLUMINATION
OF HIS WORD AND SPIRIT, ARE
THE SUPPORT AND GUIDE OF
THE SOUL.

DISCIPLE.

1. O MOST benign LORD JESUS! how great is the delight of a devout soul, that is permitted to feast at Thy Holy Table, where no other food is given her to eat but Thyself, her most desirable and only Good! O that, like Mary, I could stand in Thy Presence, weeping thro' excess of love, and bathing Thy Feet with my tears! But where is such devotion to be found, where such a plentiful effusion of holy tears? and yet, here, in Thy Sight, and the sight of glorifying Angels, my heart ought to be wholly inflamed with love, and to overflow with joy; for here Thou art present, tho' invisible to the eyes of flesh and blood!

2. What eye, indeed, could bear to behold The Splendour of Thy Majesty, when the whole world is not able to sustain its effulgence? How mercifully, therefore, hast Thou consulted

consulted my weakness, in the positive part of this holy institution! Here I behold and adore Him, Whom angels behold and adore in Heaven; I, indeed, by faith; they by sight, and without a veil: but, by the Light of Faith, I will be content to walk, till The Day of Everlasting Brightness shall dawn upon me, and the shadows of types and ordinances shall disappear.

3. “*When that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away;*” and the use of sacraments shall cease. The blessed partakers of Heavenly Glory need not the restoring and sustaining aid of this Holy Supper; they rejoice without end in The Presence of GOD; and beholding His Glory face to face, are “*changed into the Same Image from glory to glory:*” and they taste THE WORD OF GOD made flesh, as He was from the Beginning, and remaineth for ever.

4. The idea of such wonderful Blessedness renders all the enjoyments of this life tasteless and wearisome; and while I do not behold my LORD in glory, I rate at nothing all that I see and hear. Thou art my witness, O GOD, that nothing can satisfy me, nothing give me rest, but Thyself, Whom I desire to contemplate and enjoy for ever. But as such Blessedness cannot possibly be attained in this state of sin and death, I must frame my heart to great patience, and resign myself and all my desires wholly

wholly to Thy Will. Even those saints, O LORD, who now rejoice with Thee in The Kingdom of Heaven, whilst they lived on earth, waited in faith and patience The Coming of Thy Glory: and what they believed, I believe; what they hoped for, I hope for; where they are arrived, thither, by Thy Grace, I trust to come; and, in the mean time, encouraged by their example, and supported by Thy Spirit, I will walk before Thee in faith, resignation, obedience, and love.

5. Fallen as I am, into darkness and poverty, I have peculiar need both of food and light! and Thou givest me Thy Holy Scriptures, for my instruction; and Thy most Precious Body and Blood, for my meat and drink, The Sovereign Antidote to the poison of sin, and The Strength and Balm of Life! I thank Thee LORD JESUS, Splendour of Eternal Light, for Thy Heavenly Doctrine, ministered by Thy Prophets and Apostles, and made intelligible and efficacious by THY SPIRIT! I thank Thee, Creator and Redeemer of men, that, to manifest Thy Love to a fallen world, Thou hast made “*this Great Supper,*” in which, not a typical lamb, but THE LAMB OF GOD that was slain from the beginning, is set before us. Here “*the Meek eat of The Bread of Life, and are satisfied;*” and “*The Cup of their Salvation runneth over;*” here The Delights of
Paradise

Paradise are bountifully spread; and Holy Angels feel rapture and ecstasy, in feasting here with the sons of men!

6. How high and honourable is their office, who minister at The Table of The LORD! How clean should be their hands, how lowly and reverent their looks, how guileless, persuasive, and instructive their lips, how humble and pure their hearts! To them, and to all the congregations of The LORD, it is said, "*Be ye holy; for I, The LORD your GOD, am holy.*"

7. O Almighty LORD our GOD! pour forth Thy Spirit upon all Thy servants! that those who are ministered unto, as well as those that minister, may attend upon This Holy Ordinance, in meekness, simplicity, purity, and love! And grant, that every violation of that unblemished sanctity which our High Calling requires, may bring us to a more humble and contrite sense of the darkness, impurity, impotence, and misery, of fallen nature; and prompt us continually to forsake ourselves, and continually to depend upon the Redeeming Power of CHRIST, to strengthen the Divine Life which He hath quickened in us, and raise it to The Perfection of Thy Image!

CHAPTER IX.

OF THE GREAT DILIGENCE NECESSARY TO A PREPARATION FOR RECEIVING CHRIST.

CHRIST.

1. I AM the fountain of purity, and the giver of holiness. I seek a pure heart; and there is the place of my rest. “*Provide a guest-chamber fitly furnished, and I will come and eat the Passover there with my disciples.*” If thou desirest I should come to thee, and make my abode with thee, thou must make clean the habitation of thy heart; for every lover prepareth the best room for the reception of her beloved, and, as a testimony of affection, decorates it with the choicest ornaments. Exclude the cares and pleasures of the world, and all the disorders and tumults of evil passions; “*fit as a sparrow alone upon the house-top;*” and, in the bitterness of remorse and sorrow, ponder and bewail thy numerous transgressions.

2. Yet know, that no preparation which depends upon thyself can make thee fit and worthy,

worthy, tho' years were to be devoted to it, and no other object was to engage thy attention; but it is by mere Grace and Mercy that thou art permitted to approach my table, to which thou art called as a beggar is called to the table of the rich, who can make no other return for the condescension that is shewn him, but the humblest submission and the most grateful acknowledgment. Do thy part, and do it with all thy strength. Come, not from custom, or by compulsion; but with faith, reverence, and love, come and receive the body of thy Lord, who has given Himself for thee. I have called thee; I have commanded this to be done; and I will supply whatever ability is wanting on thy part: come, then, and receive the refreshment which I am always ready to bestow.

3. When thou hast the Grace of ardent devotion, render the praise of it to me who gave it thee, not because thou wert worthy, but because I had compassion on thee: when thou hast it not, but feelest thyself cold and barren, pray without ceasing; “*ask, seek, and knock;*” and desist not from thy importunity, till thou perceivest some drops of its Life-restoring balm. Thou needest me, not I thee; thou comest not to sanctify me, but I come to sanctify and perfect thee. Come, then, and be sanctified by me, and united to me; come, and receive new supplies of spiritual strength,
Y that

that thou mayst be raised from one degree of holiness to another. O neglect not so great a Salvation! but exert all thy strength to banish from thy heart whatever is “*earthly, sensual, and devilish,*” that there may be no intruding evil to pollute or profane the habitation of thy Beloved!

4. But this entire devotedness to me, is not only necessary as a preparation for my Communion, but necessary also as a preservative of the blessings which thou deriveest from it. If the desire with which thou now longest to receive me is suffered to grow languid and cold, the bread of angels will do thee little good; and it will be less ardent when thou comest to receive me again: but if its holy fire is continually maintained by continual self-denial, watchfulness, and prayer, it will long for still larger portions of The Heavenly Manna, and The Divine Life of thy soul will be raised to higher degrees of strength and beauty.

5. Nothing more effectually destroys the benefits of my Communion, and plunges the soul deeper in its own evil, than the immediate surrender of its will to the cares and pleasures of this earthly life. Beware, therefore, of much worldly business, and much conversation and amusement: keep in retirement and solitude, and there enjoy thy GOD, of whom, while thy heart adhereth to Him,
the

the world cannot rob thee. O live no longer to thyself, and to the restless and tormenting desires of fallen nature; but live wholly to me, who have loved thee, and given myself for thee!

CHAPTER X.

THAT UNION WITH CHRIST, IS THE
SOLE DESIRE OF THE DEVOUT
COMMUNICANT.

DISCIPLE.

I. LORD, how shall I now be able to attend to none but Thee; to open my whole heart for Thy reception; and to enjoy Thee as my soul desireth, without the interruption or notice of others! How shall I be able to bar the intrusion of sensual objects; and, in undisturbed privacy, and with unreserved affection, converse with Thee, as one lover converseth with another, and “*as a man speaketh unto his friend!*” It is “*my heart’s sole desire and prayer,*” to be divorced from all creatures, and wedded for ever to Thee. When, O LORD GOD, shall I be absorbed in Thy Fulness; when shall I lose, in the love of Thee, all perception of myself, and have no sense of any being but Thine? O form

this Blessed Union, and grant it may be indissoluble !

2. Verily, Thou art my my beloved, “ *the* “ *Choicest among ten thousand,*” with Whom my soul desireth to dwell all the days of her life ! Verily, Thou art my Peace and Everlasting Rest, without Whom there is nothing but labour, and sorrow, and endless misery ! Verily, “ *Thou art a GOD that hidest Thy-* “ *self ;*” and Thy counsel is not with the wicked, but with the humble and meek. How wonderful are the manifestations of Thy Benignity to all Thy Children, whom Thou condescendest to feed with “ *The Bread that* “ *came down from Heaven !*” “ *What nation* “ *is there so great, who hath GOD so nigh* “ *unto them, as Thou, our GOD, art*” unto all Thy regenerate people ; to whom, for the continual support and improvement of their Heavenly Life, thou givest Thyself as meat and drink ! O Grace unutterable, O Condescension most amazing, O Love immeasurable, peculiarly shewn to fallen man ! What shall I render unto The LORD for all His Benefits ? “ *I will take the Bread of Life, and The Cup* “ *of Salvation, and call upon His Name ; I will* “ *pay my vows unto The LORD, now in the* “ *presence of His people ;*” and I will give Him my whole heart, an everlasting sacrifice of praise, thanksgiving, obedience, and love !

CHAPTER XI.

OF THE GREAT FERVOUR WITH WHICH
MANY DESIRE THE COMMUNION OF
THE BODY AND BLOOD OF CHRIST.

DISCIPLE.

1. “ *How great is Thy Goodness, O LORD,
“ which Thou hast laid up for them that fear*”
and love Thee! When I call to mind the ex-
alted and affectionate devotion of some holy
souls, I am covered with confusion at the
coldness with which I approach Thy Holy
Table, and the insensibility with which I par-
take of its Divine Bounties. O that my eyes
were filled with such tears of love; that I felt
the same powerful attractions to Thee, the
same eager thirst after The Fountain of Life;
and that, like theirs, my spirit was a flame of
Seraphick Fire! Such faith and love is a sure
testimony of Thy Sanctifying Presence; and
they must truly know their LORD “ *in break-*
“ *ing of bread,*” whose hearts thus “ *burn*
“ *within them*” while he converses with them!

2. O sweet JESUS! benign and munificent
Saviour! have compassion upon Thy poor
feeble servant, and let me feel the Life-restor-

ing efficacy of this Holy Communion; that my faith in Thy Redeeming Power may be strengthened, that my hope in Thy Infinite Goodness may be enlarged, and that my charity may be perfectly enflamed and never fail more! Thy Mercy, O LORD, is disposed to do more than I can ask or conceive; and when the hour of Thy Good Pleasure is come, Thou wilt visit me in the Spirit of Fervour. The desire that now burns for Thee, languid as its flame is, is kindled by Thyself; and Thou wilt graciously increase it, till it numbers me among the most fervent of Thy Lovers.

CHAPTER XII.

THAT THE GRACE OF DEVOTION
IS OBTAINED BY HUMILITY AND
SELF-DENIAL:

1. THOU must desire the Grace of Devotion earnestly, pray for it continually, patiently and confidently wait for it, thankfully receive it, humbly keep it, and diligently co-operate with it; and not only the time, but the measure of this Heavenly Visitation, must be resigned to The Will of GOD.

2. Thou oughtest chiefly to humble thyself, when thou hast little or no perception of the Power of Devotion. Be not, however, much
dejected,

dejected, nor give thyself over to immoderate grief: GOD frequently bestows in an instant what He has long withheld; and defers, to the end of prayer, what is earnestly requested at the beginning.

3. If Grace was given immediately, and was always present at a wish, the blessing would be too great for the infirmity of man to bear; it is, therefore, to be requested with humble hope, and waited for with unwearied patience. Yet, when it is not given, or having been given is secretly taken away, impute the want of it to thyself and thy sins: that is often small by which Grace is obstructed or lost, if any thing can be called small, that deprives us of so transcendent a good; but, whatever it be, if thou overcomest it and entirely removest it, the desire of thy heart will be immediately gratified, and Grace will be present with thee again.

4. The moment thou hast surrendered up thyself to GOD with all thy heart, and seekest neither this nor that for the gratification of thy own will, thou wilt find thyself united to Him, and be at peace; for the accomplishment of the Divine Will, is the Perfect Blessedness of perfect spirits. Whosoever, therefore, divests himself of all concern for created things, whether as the objects of delight or disgust, and in singleness of heart raises his whole intention to GOD, is fitly disposed for

The Operations of THE DIVINE SPIRIT, and will be filled with The Grace of Devotion; for The Lord pours most blessings into those vessels that he finds most empty: and when man renounces The Spirit of This World, and dies to the gratification of his own will, The Spirit of Grace will manifest its presence and power within him, and raise the soul, thus set free from selfishness and sin, to a familiar intercourse with Heaven. Then shall he “*see The Loving-kindness of The LORD;*” then shall he be filled with the treasures of His Grace; then shall he stand amazed at his own abundance; and then his heart shall be enlarged, “*because The Hand of The LORD*” “*is with him, and he has committed himself*” “*into The Hand of The LORD for ever.*”

5. Thus shall the man be blessed, that delayeth not to seek The LORD with all his heart, nor receiveth The Renewed Life of his soul in vain. He alone enjoyeth the Blessed Union that is found in the Holy Eucharist; because he alone regardeth not his own personal devotion and consolation, but above all devotion and consolation regardeth The Honour and Glory of GOD.

CHAPTER XIII.

THAT WE MUST LAY OPEN OUR
NUMEROUS TROUBLES AND WANTS
BEFORE CHRIST, AND HUMBLY
IMPLORE THE SUCCOURS OF HIS
GRACE.

DISCIPLE.

1. O MOST benign and most loving LORD,
Whom now my soul longeth to receive! Thou
knowest my want and weakness, and the nu-
merous evils in which I am involved; Thou
knowest how often, and how exceedingly, I
am oppressed, tempted, troubled, and defiled.
To Thee I come as my Sovereign Remedy,
and humbly beg to be delivered, strengthened,
comforted, and purified. I speak to Him Who
“*knoweth all things* ;” Who searcheth the
lowest depths of my evil; and Who alone can
restore me to Life, Light, Purity, and Peace!
Thou knowest, O LORD, the good that I stand
most in need of; and how destitute I am of
that “*holiness, without which none can see*”
and enjoy Thee!

2. Behold, I stand before Thee, hungry
and naked, begging The Bread of Life, and
The Robe of Righteousness! O feed Thy
famished

famished Prodigal, clothe him with Thy precious garment! In flame his coldness, with The Fire of Thy Love; enlighten his darkness, with The Splendour of Thy Presence! O turn into bitterness, all carnal consolation; turn into patience, all adversity and distress; and turn all regard for worldly objects and interests, and for all finite good, into contempt and forgetfulness! Raise my desires to Thee in Heaven, and suffer them no more to descend and wander after the unsatisfying enjoyments of earth! Be Thou, alone, delightful and desirable to my soul for ever; for Thou, alone, art my meat and drink, my treasure, my love, my joy, and my sole and everlasting good! Let me not, then, depart from Thee, hungry and thirsty; but let me feel The Operation and Power of That Mercy, which Thou hast often manifested to Thy Saints!

3. Thou, O LORD, art a Fire incapable of languor or decay; a love enlightening the understanding, and purifying the heart! O that, by Thy Presence, Thou wouldst set me all in flames, consume me entirely, transform me into thyself, and make me One Life, Spirit, and Love, with Thee!

CHAPTER XIV.

OF THE ARDENT DESIRE OF
RECEIVING CHRIST.

DISCIPLE.

1. O MY GOD, my Life and Love, my Supreme and Everlasting Good! with all the reverence and affection of which I am capable, I now open my heart to receive Thee; wishing it was more worthy of Thy Divine Presence; more like to theirs, whose Holiness and Ardour have raised them to the most Intimate Communion with Thee!

2. But tho' I am not worthy of their exalted devotion, yet I offer Thee my whole heart, as if it was inflamed with the most ardent desires; wishing to reserve nothing to myself, but to make a free and chearful oblation of all I have and am, to Thy Glory!

3. O my Almighty Creator, and Most Merciful Redeemer, I desire to receive Thee with that reverence and humility, that faith and hope, that thankfulness and praise, that purity and love, with which the Blessed Virgin desired to receive Thee, when, to The Angel, who brought the glad tidings of Thy Mysterious Incarnation, she meekly and devoutly said,
“Behold

*“ Behold the handmaid of THE LORD! be it
“ unto me according to Thy Word!”* And as
The Holy Baptist, the greatest among those
that are born of women, and Thy immediate
Messenger chosen to prepare Thy Way, leaped
in The Joy of The HOLY GHOST at Thy
Divine Presence, whilst he was yet in his
mother’s womb; and afterwards, when he
found Thee walking among men, humbly
asserted his character of *“ The Bridegroom’s
“ friend,”* and testified that *“ his joy was
“ fulfilled”* because he had heard Thy Voice;
so I hope to be quickened into Life and Love
by Thy Blessed Presence, and to rejoice ex-
ceedingly when I hear Thy Voice speaking
Peace and Salvation to my soul!

4. Accept, O LORD GOD, my ardent desire
of rendering Thee the blessing and praise due
to Thy Infinite Majesty, and to the multitude
of Thy Tender Mercies: and in union with
the affections, illuminations, and raptures, and
all the virtues, powers, and praises of all
spirits, I now offer Thee the affections and
praises of my own heart; and desire to join
Thy regenerate sons on earth, Thy glorified
saints in heaven, and the innumerable hosts of
pure spirits, in magnifying Thy Holy Name
for ever and ever!

5. O may all tribes, languages, and nations
of the world, experience and celebrate The
Blessings of Redeeming Love! May all that
come

come to Thy Table, come with full faith in Thee, as The Atonement for sin, and as The Principle of their renewed Heavenly Life; and in their intreaties for Mercy, may they intreat for me! And when they depart, wonderfully strengthened and richly comforted, may they vouchsafe still to remember me, a poor sinful creature, and “*make mention of me always in their prayers!*”

CHAPTER XV.

THAT MAN MUST SUPPRESS HIS
VAIN CURIOSITY, AND SUBJECT
HIS REASON TO THE OBEDIENCE
OF FAITH.

I. BEWARE of curious and unprofitable researches into the mystery of the Blessed Sacrament, which will involve thee in endless doubt and perplexity. GOD can do more than man can comprehend: and he that presumes to look upon The Majesty of The Most High, shall be oppressed by His Glory. An humble inquiry into The Truth “*once delivered to the saints,*” prompted by a desire to be enlightened and governed by it,
is

is highly commendable; and that meek simplicity, which shuns the intricate and thorny mazes of “*science falsely so called*,” to walk in The Plain and Sure Path of GOD’s Commandments, is always blessed: but while fruitless speculations employ and engross the mind, “*The One Thing Needful*” is neglected and lost. Thou art called, not to the comprehension of The Deep Things of GOD, but to faith and holiness. Submit thyself, therefore, to GOD, and bring thy senses to the obedience of faith; and all that knowledge will be imparted to thee, which is necessary to the attainment of Eternal Life.

2. If, thro’ the darkness of fallen nature and the malignity of The Enemy, thou art tempted with doubts about the mysterious benefits of this sacrament, dispute not with thy own vain thoughts, nor stay to solve the difficulties which the Devil suggests to thy mind; but turn immediately to GOD, confiding in the declarations of His prophets and apostles, confiding in the words of Him “*Who spake as man never spake*,” and The Evil Spirit will soon depart from thee. They are not unbelievers and sinners, in whom the Devil has a secure possession, but the faithful and the holy, who are thus disturbed with doubts and difficulties: and such trials are profitable to the servants of GOD; they shew the weakness and vanity of nature, and the strength and sufficiency of Grace.

3. With

3. With simplicity, faith, and reverence, therefore, approach The Table of Thy LORD; and whatever thou art not able to understand, resign to The Will of That SPIRIT which will lead thee into all necessary Truth. GOD deceiveth not man; but man deceiveth himself, when he leans to his own understanding. GOD walketh with the humble, giveth understanding to the simple, revealeth Himself to babes, maketh known His Counsels to the pure in heart, and hideth His Grace from the inquisitive and the proud.

4. Reason is born of man, and easily errs; Faith is born of GOD, and cannot be deceived: Reason, therefore, must follow and submit to Faith, not go before and controll it. Faith and Love are The Light and Life of The Regenerate Nature; and, in this sacrament, their Operations are as powerful as they are secret. The Infinite, The Omnipotent, The Incomprehensible GOD, doth great and unsearchable things in earth and heaven, and there is no finding out The Wonders of His Power: but if The Works and Ways of GOD could be comprehended by the Reason of man, they would cease to be wonderful, and could not be called unsearchable.

THE END OF THE BOOK
OF THE
SACRAMENT.

E R R A T A.

- P. 69 line 18. for *oppression*, read *opposition*.
126. line 3. after *and am nothing*, place a full point.
127. line 2. after *men*, place a colon.
294. in the running title, for *Book Third*, read *Of the
Sacrament*.
310. line 19. before *restore* read *can*.
321. line 13. for *of*, read *of*.

REPORT

1. The first part of the report is devoted to a general description of the country and its resources. It includes a detailed account of the climate, the soil, and the various products of the land. It also mentions the principal towns and the state of the roads.

2. The second part of the report contains a list of the principal occupations of the people. It mentions agriculture, stock raising, and the various handicrafts. It also gives some information about the state of the commerce and the navigation of the rivers.

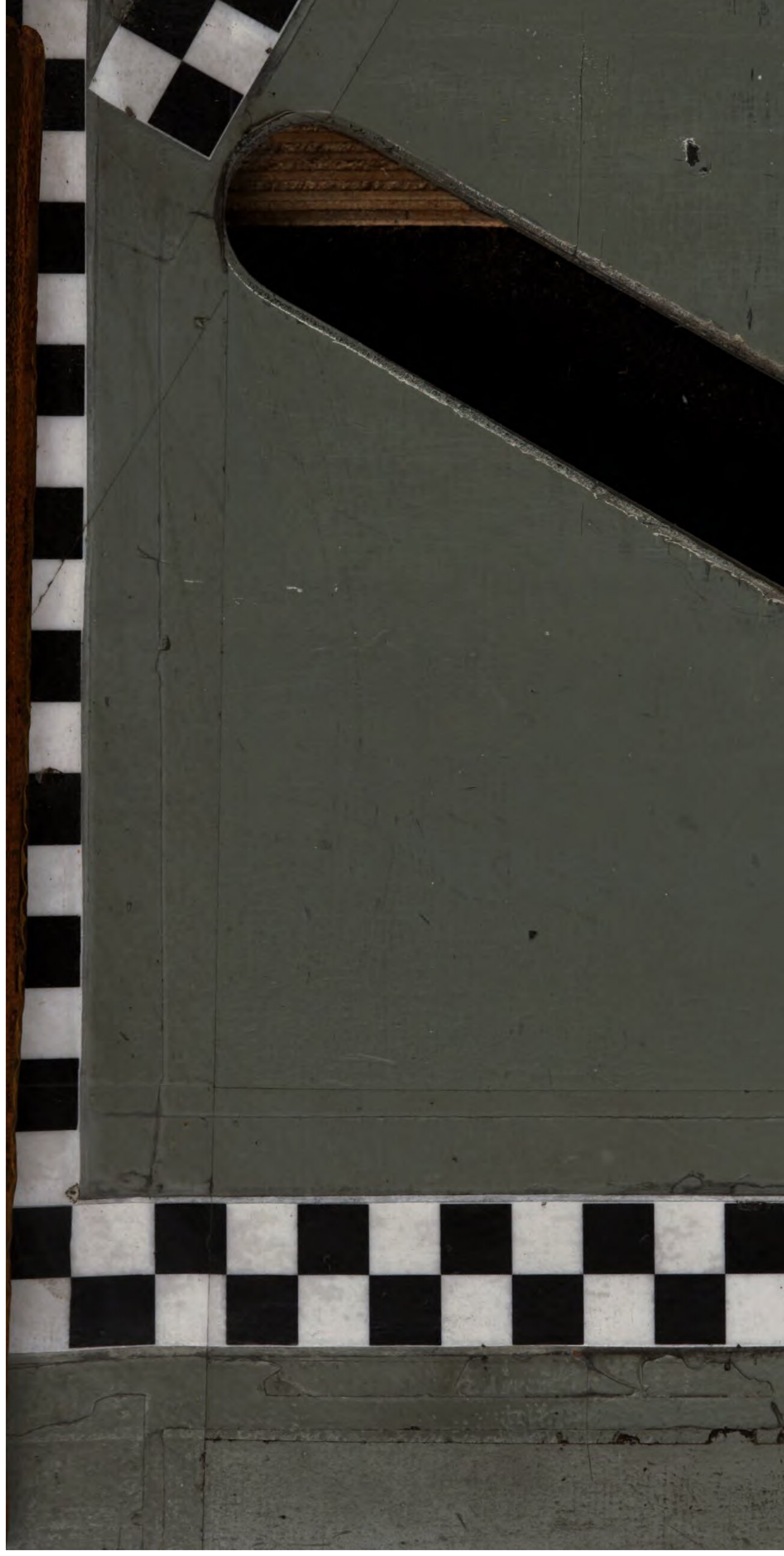
3. The third part of the report is devoted to a description of the principal towns and cities. It gives some information about the population, the state of the buildings, and the principal occupations of the people. It also mentions the state of the roads and the navigation of the rivers.

4. The fourth part of the report contains a list of the principal rivers and streams. It gives some information about the length, the width, and the depth of the rivers. It also mentions the state of the navigation and the principal towns situated on the banks of the rivers.

5. The fifth part of the report is devoted to a description of the principal mountains and hills. It gives some information about the height, the shape, and the position of the mountains. It also mentions the state of the navigation and the principal towns situated in the valleys.







Thomas

Of the Imitation of Christ in three books: with the book of the sacrament

London 1785

P.lat. 1163

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10743563-0